

VERITAS NetBackup BusinessServer™ 4.5

Media Manager System Administrator's Guide

for Windows

**March 2002
30-000488-011**


VERITAS

Disclaimer

The information contained in this publication is subject to change without notice. VERITAS Software Corporation makes no warranty of any kind with regard to this manual, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. VERITAS Software Corporation shall not be liable for errors contained herein or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this manual.

Copyright

Copyright © 1999-2002 VERITAS Software Corporation. All Rights Reserved. VERITAS, VERITAS SOFTWARE, the VERITAS logo, *Business Without Interruption*, VERITAS The Data Availability Company, VERITAS NetBackup, VERITAS NetBackup BusinessServer, VERITAS Remote Storage for Microsoft Exchange, VERITAS Storage Migrator, and VERITAS Storage Migrator Remote are trademarks or registered trademarks of VERITAS Software Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries. Other product names mentioned herein may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Portions of this software are derived from the RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm. Copyright 1991-92, RSA Data Security, Inc. Created 1991. All rights reserved.

VERITAS Software Corporation
350 Ellis Street
Mountain View, CA 94043
USA
Phone 650-527-8000
Fax 650-527-2908
www.veritas.com



Contents

About This Guide .....	.xvii
Audience .....	.xvii
Organization .....	.xvii
Related Documents .....	.xviii
Accessibility .....	.xix
Conventions .....	.xix
Type Style .....	.xix
Notes and Cautions .....	.xx
Key Combinations .....	.xx
Command Usage .....	.xx
Terms .....	.xxi
Getting Help .....	.xxi
Chapter 1. Introduction to Media Manager	1
Media Manager Features	1
Media Manager Hosts	3
Media Manager-Controlled Storage Devices	4
Media Manager Volumes	4
Mounting and Using Volumes	5
Media Manager Administration Utilities	5
Starting the Media Manager Administration Utilities	6
Shortcut Menus	7
Device and Media Configuration Overview	7



Chapter 2. Configuring Storage Devices	9
Starting Device Management	9
Using the Device Management Window	10
Menus and Commands	11
Toolbars	12
Tree Pane	13
Global Topology Pane	13
Topology Images	13
Topology Connections	14
Selecting Topology Objects	15
Devices Pane	15
Managing the Devices Pane	15
Using the Drives Tab	15
Using the Robots Tab	18
Using the Hosts Tab	19
Status Bar	20
Shortcut Menus and Commands	20
Tool Tips	21
Customizing the Window	21
Showing or Hiding Columns	22
Rearranging Columns	22
Changing the View of the Topology Pane	22
Allowable Media Manager Characters	22
Performing Initial Device Configuration	23
Media Manager Security	24
vmd Considerations	24
Example SERVER Entries	25
Using the Device Configuration Wizard to Configure Devices	25
Starting the Wizard	26
Rerunning the Wizard	26



External Device Mapping Files	26
Obtaining External Device Mapping Files	27
Managing Partially-Configured Devices	27
Adding Robots	27
Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Robots	28
Device Host	29
Robot Type	29
Robot Number	29
Volume Database Host	29
Robot Control	30
Robot is controlled locally by this device host	31
Robot control is attached to an NDMP host	32
Adding Drives	33
Dialog Box Entries for Adding or Changing Drives	34
Device Host Section	34
Drive Information Section	34
Robotic Drive Information Section	36
Managing Robots and Drives	36
Changing a Robot Configuration	37
Changing the Configuration of a Drive	38
Deleting Robots	38
Deleting Drives	39
Printing Your Device Configuration	39
Robot and Drive Configuration Example	40
Chapter 3. Managing Media	43
Starting Media Management	43
Using the Media Management Window	44
Menus and Commands	45
Toolbars	46



Tree Pane	47
Volumes Pane	48
Managing the Volumes Pane	48
Volume Pools List	48
Volume Groups List	49
Robots List	49
Volumes List	50
Status Bar	53
Shortcut Menus and Commands	53
Tool Tips	53
Customizing the Window	54
Showing or Hiding Columns	54
Rearranging Columns	54
Allowable Media Manager Characters	54
Administering Media on Other Hosts	54
Configuring Volume Pools	55
Adding a New Volume Pool or Scratch Volume Pool	56
Adding a Scratch Volume Pool	56
Changing the Attributes of a Volume Pool	57
Changing a Volume Pool To a Scratch Volume Pool	58
Changing the Volume Pool Assignment for a Volume	58
Deleting a Volume Pool	59
Methods Available for Injecting and Ejecting Volumes	60
Methods for Injecting Volumes into a Robot	60
When Adding New Volumes	60
When Moving Volumes	61
When Performing a Volume Configuration Update Using Robot Inventory ..	61
Methods for Ejecting Volumes From a Robot	62
When Moving Volumes	62
Using the Eject Volumes From Robot Command	62



Inject and Eject Functions Available by Robot Type	63
Adding New Volumes	63
Methods Available for Adding Volumes	64
Robotic Volumes (Volumes Located in a Robot)	64
Standalone Volumes (Volumes To Be Used in Standalone Drives)	64
NetBackup Catalog Backup Volumes	65
Notes on Labeling NetBackup Volumes	65
Adding Volumes - Using the Robot Inventory Update Option	66
Adding Volumes - Using the Actions Menu	66
Dialog Box Entries for New Volumes	68
Media Type	68
Robot	68
Find Robots	68
Number of Volumes	68
Media ID Naming Style	69
Media ID or First Media ID	69
Description	69
First Slot Number	69
Maximum Mounts	70
Maximum Cleanings	70
Volume Group	70
Volume Pool	71
Inject Volume Into Robot via the Media Access Port	71
Using the Volume Configuration Wizard	72
Wizard Limitations	72
What To Expect In This Wizard	72
Before You Start This Wizard	73
To Start This Wizard	73
Moving Volumes	73
Moving Volumes - Using the Robot Inventory Update Option	74



Moving Volumes - Using the Actions Menu	74
Dialog Box Entries for Move Volumes	76
Volumes to Move	76
Robot	76
Find Robots	76
Volume Group	77
First Slot Number	77
Eject Volume From Robot via the Media Access Port	78
Inject Volume Into Robot via the Media Access Port	78
When to Delete Volumes	78
Deleting Volumes	79
Deleting a Volume Group	79
Ejecting Volumes From Robots (Actions Menu Command)	79
Eject Volumes Dialog Type 1	80
Eject Volumes Dialog Type 2	81
Deassigning Volumes	82
Determining Which Application is Using a Volume	82
Deassigning NetBackup Volumes	82
Deassigning NetBackup Regular Backup Volumes	83
Deassigning NetBackup Catalog Backup Volumes	83
Changing the Attributes for a Volume	83
Dialog Box Entries for Change Volumes	84
Maximum Mounts	84
Expiration Date	85
Description	86
Volume Pool	86
Number of Cleanings Remaining	86
Changing the Volume Group of a Volume	87
Replacing Volumes	87
Replacing a Volume Without Reusing the Media ID	88



Replacing a Volume and Reusing the Media ID	88
Recycling Volumes	89
Recycling Volumes Under the Same Media ID	89
Recycling Volumes Under a New Media ID	89
Chapter 4. Managing Media in Robots	91
Robot Management Overview	91
Robot Inventory Operations (Inventory Robot Dialog)	91
Checking Barcodes (Rescan/Update Barcodes Dialog)	93
Showing the Contents of a Robot	93
Comparing Robot Contents with the Volume Configuration	94
Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot	97
When to Use Update Volume Configuration	97
When Not to Use Update Volume Configuration	98
To Update the Volume Configuration for a Robot	99
Changing the Update Options	101
Update Options	102
Media Which Have Been Removed From the Robot Assign to Volume Group ..	102
Media Which Have Been Moved Into or Within the Robot Assign to Volume	
Group	103
Media ID Prefix	104
Use Barcode Rules	106
Media Type (for robots that are not RSM robots)	106
Volume Pool	109
Media Type Mappings (for RSM robots)	110
Examples of Updating a Volume Configuration	112
Example 1: Remove a volume from a robot	112
Example 2: Add existing standalone volumes to a robot	113
Example 3: Move existing volumes within a robot	116
Example 4: Add new volumes to a robot	117



Example 5: Add cleaning tapes to a robot	119
Example 7: Adding existing volumes when barcodes are not used	120
Configuring Barcode Rules	122
Adding a New Barcode Rule	123
Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Barcode Rules	124
Barcode Tag	124
Media Type	125
Volume Pool	126
Maximum Mounts	126
Description	127
Changing a Barcode Rule	127
Deleting a Barcode Rule	128
Configuring Media ID Generation Rules	128
Adding a New Media ID Generation Rule	128
Changing a Media ID Generation Rule	130
Deleting a Media ID Generation Rule	130
Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Media ID Generation Rules	131
Robot Number	131
Barcode Length	131
Media ID Generation Rule	131
Rescanning and Updating Barcodes for a Robot	132
When to Use Rescan/Update	132
When Not to Use Rescan/Update	132
To Rescan/Update Barcodes	132
Chapter 5. Monitoring Storage Devices	135
Starting Device Monitor	135
Using the Device Monitor Window	136
Menus and Commands	137
Toolbars	139



Global Topology Pane	139
Topology Images	140
Topology Connections	141
Selecting Topology Objects	142
Drives Status Pane	142
Managing the Drives Status Pane	142
Pending Requests Pane	145
Managing the Pending Requests Pane	145
Status Bar	147
Shortcut Menus and Commands	147
Tool Tips	147
Customizing the Window	148
Showing or Hiding Columns	148
Rearranging Columns	148
Changing the View of the Topology Pane	148
Changing the Screen Display Refresh Rate	148
Allowable Media Manager Characters	149
Controlling the NetBackup Device Manager Service	149
Administering Devices on Other Hosts	150
Changing the Operating Mode of a Drive	150
Changing Mode Example	151
Resetting a Drive	152
Adding or Changing a Drive Comment	153
Handling Pending Requests and Pending Actions	153
Pending Requests	153
Pending Actions	154
Assigning a Drive to a Pending Request	154
Assigning a Drive Example 1	155
Assigning a Drive Example 2	156
Resolving Pending Actions	157



Resubmitting Requests	158
Denying Requests	158
Appendix A. Media Manager Commands and Processes	161
rsmd	162
tl4d	163
tl8d	164
tldd	167
tpclean	170
tpconfig	173
tpreq	181
tpunmount	183
ts8d	184
tsdd	185
vmadd	186
vmchange	189
vmcheckxxx	195
vmdelete	197
vmoprcmd	198
vmpool	201
vmquery	204
vmrule	208
vmupdate	210
Appendix B. Media Manager Reference Topics	213
Robot Overview	213
Media Manager Robot Types	213
Media Manager Media Types	214
Robot Attributes	215
Table-Driven Robotics	220
Robotic Test Utilities	220



Robotic Processes	220
Correlating Device Files to Physical Drives When Adding Drives	222
Correlating On Windows Hosts	222
Correlating On UNIX Hosts	223
Drive Cleaning	225
Frequency-Based Cleaning	225
On-Demand Cleaning	226
TapeAlert	226
Requirements for TapeAlert and Media Manager	226
TapeAlert and Media Manager	227
TapeAlert and Frequency-based Cleaning	227
Using a Cleaning Tape	227
Volume Pools and Volume Groups	227
Volume Pools	228
Volume Groups	228
Volume Pools and Groups Example	229
Scratch Volume Pools	230
Moving Volumes	232
Barcodes	233
Barcode Rules	234
Media ID Generation Rules	236
vmd Security	236
Possible NetBackup and Media Manager Conflicts	237
NetBackup Authentication/Authorization	237
Media Manager vmd Authentication/Authorization	238
No vm.conf Entry Present	238
vm.conf Entry Present	239
Media Manager Server-Based vmd Security	239
Media Manager Enhanced vmd Authorization	240
Setting up Enhanced Authorization	240



How Media Manager Selects a Drive for a Robotic Mount Request	240
Administrators Quick Reference	241
Media Manager Commands	241
Log Files	242
Media Manager Configuration File (vm.conf)	243
Authorization Required	243
Backup Exec - Mapping Media Types	243
Client Port Range	244
Days To Keep Debug Logs	245
Disable Automatic Path Remapping	245
Disallow Non-NDMP Request on NDMP Drive	245
Do Not Eject Standalone Tapes	246
Media ID Generation	246
Media ID Prefix	247
Preferred Group	247
Prevent Media Removal (TL8 Robots)	248
Random Port Numbers	248
Required Network Interface	248
RSM Media Mapping	249
Scratch Pool Configuration	249
Server Entry	249
Verbose Message Logging	250
Example vm.conf File	250
Appendix C. Robot Drive and Slot Layouts	251
ADIC Scalar 218 (TLD)	252
Exabyte 430	
Sony LIB-304 (TL8)	252
ADIC VLS DLT (TSD)	253
ATL 2/28 DLT Library (TLD)	253
ATL P1000	



Sun StorEdge L1000 (TLD)	254
ATL M1500	
M4 Data M1500 (TLD)	255
Breece Hill Q2.15	
IBM 7337-305	
IBM 3447-105 (TLD)	256
Breece Hill Q7 (TLD)	256
Compaq 35/70 (TLD)	257
Exabyte 10i, 10e, 10h	
Exabyte 210	
Exabyte EZ17 (TS8)	257
Exabyte 18D (TLD)	258
Exabyte 220	
ADIC Scalar AIT 220	
Sun StorEdge L400 (TL8)	258
Exabyte 230D (TLD)	259
HP SureStore 1/9	
Sun StorEdge L9 (TLD)	259
ADIC Fastor (TLD)	260
NEC Autoloader DLT (TLD)	261
Overland Data LXBx110	
Overland Data LXBx210	
Compaq TL891	
Compaq TL892 (TLD)	262
Overland Data Library Pro (TL8)	263
Overland Data NEO	
Overland Data LxL1u11 (TLD)	264
Compaq Storage Works MSL 5026	
Compaq Storage Works MSL 5052 (TLD)	265
STK 9730	
STK 9738	
DELL 130T	
HP SureStore E 3/30 (A4853A) (TLD)	266
STK L20	
NCR 6461 (TLD)	267



Appendix D. Microsoft Removable Storage Manager (RSM)	269
Media Manager and Microsoft RSM	269
Considerations When Using Microsoft RSM	269
Microsoft RSM Interface	270
Media Requests Involving an RSM Robot	270
Configuring RSM Robotic Control	270
Configuring RSM Drives in Media Manager	271
Verifying a Configuration	271
Activating a Configuration	272
Adding RSM Volumes	272
Removing Tapes from the Robot	273
Robot Inventory Operations	273
vm.conf Map Entries For RSM Robots	274
Glossary	277
Index	305



About This Guide

This guide explains how to configure and use Media Manager software on a Windows server (see the Terms section below for the supported Windows server platforms).

Media Manager is the component of VERITAS NetBackup BusinessServer that manages the devices and media that are used to store your backup data.

In this guide, the term *NetBackup* refers to the VERITAS NetBackup BusinessServer product.

Audience

This guide is intended for system administrators and assumes a good working knowledge of the Windows operating system on the server where the product is used.

In this guide, a system administrator is defined as a person with Windows system administrator privileges and responsibilities.

Organization

This guide contains the following chapters:

- ◆ “Introduction to Media Manager” on page 1 provides an overview of Media Manager and its capabilities.
- ◆ “Configuring Storage Devices” on page 9 explains how to configure Media Manager to manage the drives and robots at your site.
- ◆ “Managing Media” on page 43 provides an overview of the Media node. It also contains topics on configuring Media Manager to use the media (volumes and volume pools) that it requires to store backups.
- ◆ “Managing Media in Robots” on page 91 explains how to configure Media Manager to use the media in robots (using robot inventory).
- ◆ “Monitoring Storage Devices” on page 135 explains tasks such as monitoring drives and media mount requests, and assigning a requested volume to a drive.



In addition to these chapters, there are the following appendixes, a glossary of NetBackup terms and an index.

- ◆ “Media Manager Commands and Processes” on page 161 explains the commands that can be run from a Windows command prompt.
- ◆ “Media Manager Reference Topics” on page 213 provides background information on important Media Manager features and concepts.
- ◆ “Robot Drive and Slot Layouts” on page 251 contains diagrams that show the drive layout and slot locations for many of the robots that Media Manager supports.
- ◆ “Microsoft Removable Storage Manager (RSM)” on page 269 explains how Media Manager communicates with robots under the control of Microsoft Removable Storage Manager.

Related Documents

NetBackup documents that will be useful are listed below. For a complete list of related documents, see the NetBackup release notes. Depending on your configuration, other documents may also be required.

- ◆ *NetBackup BusinessServer Getting Started Guide for Windows*
Gives you the information you need to quickly get NetBackup BusinessServer server software installed and running. This is the first document that you should read after opening the NetBackup BusinessServer package.
- ◆ *NetBackup BusinessServer System Administrator’s Guide for Windows*
Explains how to configure and manage NetBackup BusinessServer on a Windows server.
- ◆ *NetBackup Global Data Manager System Administrator’s Guide for UNIX and Windows*
Explains how to install, configure, and use Global Data Manager (GDM) for NetBackup DataCenter and BusinessServer products on UNIX and Windows-based operating systems.
- ◆ *NetBackup Release Notes for UNIX and Windows*
Provides important information about NetBackup DataCenter and BusinessServer products on UNIX- and Windows-based servers, such as the platforms and operating systems that are supported and operating notes that may not be in the NetBackup manuals or the online help.
- ◆ *NetBackup Troubleshooting Guide for Windows*
Provides troubleshooting information for Windows-based NetBackup DataCenter and BusinessServer products.



- ◆ *NetBackup Vault 4.5 System Administrator's Guide for UNIX and Windows*

Describes how to configure and use logical vaults and profiles to duplicate backups, perform catalog backups, eject media, and generate reports.

Accessibility

NetBackup contains features that make the user interface easier to use by people who are visually impaired and by people who have limited dexterity. Accessibility features include:

- ◆ Support for assistive technologies such as screen readers and voice input (Windows servers only)
- ◆ Support for keyboard (mouseless) navigation using accelerator keys and mnemonic keys

For more information, see the NetBackup system administrator's guide.

Conventions

The following explains typographical and other conventions used in this guide.

Type Style

Typographic Conventions

Typeface	Usage
Bold fixed width	Input. For example, type <code>cd</code> to change directories.
Fixed width	Paths, commands, filenames, or output. For example: The default installation directory is <code>/opt/VRTSxxx</code> .
<i>Italics</i>	Book titles, new terms, or used for emphasis. For example: <i>Do not</i> ignore cautions.
<i>Sans serif (italics)</i>	Placeholder text or variables. For example: Replace <i>filename</i> with the name of your file.
Serif (no italics)	Graphical user interface (GUI) objects, such as fields, menu choices, etc. For example: Enter your password in the Password field.



Notes and Cautions

Note This is a Note. Notes are used to call attention to information that makes using the product easier or helps in avoiding problems.

Caution This is a Caution. Cautions are used to warn about situations that could cause data loss.

Key Combinations

Some keyboard command sequences use two or more keys at the same time. For example, holding down the **Ctrl** key while pressing another key. Keyboard command sequences are indicated by connecting the keys with a plus sign. For example:

Press Ctrl+t

Command Usage

The following conventions are frequently used in the synopsis of command usage.

brackets []

The enclosed command line component is optional.

Vertical bar or pipe (|)

Separates optional arguments from which the user can choose. For example, when a command has the following format:

`command arg1 | arg2`

the user can use either the *arg1* or *arg2* variable.



Terms

The terms listed in the table below are used in the VERITAS NetBackup documentation to increase readability while maintaining technical accuracy.

Term	Definition
Microsoft Windows, Windows	<p>Terms used as nouns to describe a line of operating systems developed by Microsoft, Inc.</p> <p>A term used as an adjective to describe a specific product or noun. Some examples are: Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows servers, Windows clients, Windows platforms, Windows hosts, and Windows GUI.</p> <p>Where a specific Windows product is identified, then only that particular product is valid with regards to the instance in which it is being used.</p> <p>For more information on the Windows operating systems that NetBackup supports, refer to the VERITAS support web site at http://www.support.veritas.com.</p>
Windows servers	A term that defines the Windows server platforms that NetBackup supports; those platforms are: Windows NT and Windows 2000.
Windows clients	A term that defines the Windows client platforms that NetBackup supports; those platforms are: Windows 95, 98, ME, NT, 2000, XP (for 32- and 64-bit versions), and LE.

Getting Help

For updated information about this product, including system requirements, supported platforms, supported peripherals, and a list of current patches available from Technical Support, visit our web site:

<http://www.support.veritas.com/>

VERITAS Customer Support has an extensive technical support structure that enables you to contact technical support teams that are trained to answer questions to specific products. You can contact Customer Support by sending an e-mail to support@veritas.com, or by finding a product-specific phone number from the VERITAS support web site. The following steps describe how to locate the proper phone number.



1. Open <http://www.support.veritas.com/> in your web browser.
2. Click **Contact Support**. The *Contacting Support Product List* page appears.
3. Select a product line and then a product from the lists that appear. The page will refresh with a list of technical support phone numbers that are specific to the product you just selected.



Media Manager provides control of tape storage devices and tracks the location of the removable media that are used in these devices. Media Manager is an integral part of NetBackup and is installed with it on every NetBackup server.

This chapter provides an overview of Media Manager and contains the following topics:

- ◆ Media Manager Features
- ◆ Media Manager Hosts
- ◆ Media Manager-Controlled Storage Devices
- ◆ Media Manager Volumes
- ◆ Media Manager Administration Utilities
- ◆ Device and Media Configuration Overview

Caution If you want to use devices with some other application and these devices are currently being controlled by Media Manager, you must down the drive if the drive is in the Media Manager up state.

Media Manager Features

- ◆ Robotic and Standalone Drive Support

In Media Manager, a robot is a peripheral device for the automated mounting and dismounting of volumes in tape drives. A standalone drive is a drive that is not associated with a robot.

Media Manager supports a wide range of robots and automates the handling of volumes in these devices. Except for initial setup and loading of tapes or an equipment failure, manual intervention is not required.

Visit the VERITAS support web site for a list of the platforms and peripherals that Media Manager supports.

Media handling in standalone drives is also automated to the extent that Media Manager automatically uses the tape that is in a drive, if it is required by NetBackup.



- ◆ **Media Location Tracking**

Media Manager maintains a volume database that shows the location of all media (for example, the robot and slot). This information permits Media Manager to find media when it is required to satisfy a request.

- ◆ **Media Statistics Tracking**

Media Manager keeps a record of statistics that are useful in tracking the useful life of media (for example, an expiration date and the number of times that media has been mounted).

- ◆ **Security**

Media Manager vmd security works in conjunction with NetBackup authentication/authorization security to control user access to vmd (the NetBackup Volume Manager service).

“vmd Security” on page 236 explains important security features.

- ◆ **Robot Inventory and Update**

Media Manager can inventory a robot, provide reports, and update the volume database to match the results of the inventory. This simplifies administration, by permitting you to quickly determine the contents of a robot. This also automates the configuration process.

- ◆ **Automatic Volume Recognition**

Media Manager compares the media IDs on media with media IDs that are requested and then assigns the correct media to requests. This is an essential part of providing hands-off operation for both robots and standalone drives.

- ◆ **Automatic Scanning of Media Labels**

Media Manager scans the labels of media that are in drives and displays them in the Device Monitor. This is useful if you want to know whether a certain drive contains a particular volume.

- ◆ **Volume Pools**

During configuration, you can assign media to pools that are reserved for specific uses. For example, media can be reserved for backups of specific departments. It is also possible to create a scratch pool from which media can be allocated to other pools as they are needed.

A pool named NetBackup is created by default and, unless you specify otherwise in the class or schedule, all NetBackup images go to media in the NetBackup pool. You can create other volume pools as desired. Other volume pools that are created by default are named None and DataStore.

- ◆ **Volume Groups**



When media is added, it is assigned (or you can assign) a volume group name that corresponds to the physical location of the media (for example, the robot that has the media). This is useful for administering groups of volumes and for tracking location. For example, when media is taken to offsite storage, you can move the media to specific standalone groups.

◆ Graphical User Interfaces for Media and Device Management

The following interfaces (or tree nodes) are available from the NetBackup Administration Console.

- **Device Monitor** shows the current status of all drives and allows you to easily change the state of a drive. For example, it is possible to set a drive to DOWN to prevent its use by Media Manager or reset it to clear a hang condition. You can also assign requests to drives in those instances when assignment does not occur automatically.
- **Media** provides intuitive and easy-to-use methods for managing your media, volume pools, and volume groups.
- **Devices** provides intuitive and easy-to-use methods for managing your device hosts, robots, and drives.

Media Manager Hosts

In the NetBackup Console and in this guide, a host that has Media Manager software installed is called a media server or a device host (remember that Media Manager is installed as part of NetBackup).

Two related terms that you will encounter and should be familiar with are:

◆ Device host

A host is called a device host if it controls devices for Media Manager.

◆ Volume Database Host

A host is called a volume database host if it contains information about the volumes that Media Manager uses.

For NetBackup Business Server, the host where Media Manager is installed is both the device host and the volume database host.



Media Manager-Controlled Storage Devices

Drives and robots must be added to the Media Manager configuration before NetBackup can use them. Devices can be easily added using either of the following methods using the NetBackup Administration Console:

- ◆ The Device Configuration Wizard (this is the recommended method). This wizard is available from the right pane of the NetBackup Administration Console, if you have selected **Media and Device Management** in the tree pane.
- ◆ Using **Devices** (use the new robot and new drive menu items).

NetBackup BusinessServer has the following storage device configuration limitations. You can configure only

- ◆ One robot on each host.
- ◆ Two drives on each host.
- ◆ 30 slots in a robot.

Media Manager Volumes

The tapes that Media Manager uses are referred to as volumes in NetBackup. Volumes are assigned media IDs and other attributes that are required for tracking and management. You can do the assignment manually or let Media Manager do it automatically.

- ◆ “Managing Media” on page 43
- ◆ “Managing Media in Robots” on page 91

The following are examples of what occurs when NetBackup requests a volume for a backup:

- ◆ If NetBackup requests an existing volume, Media Manager locates the volume and performs the steps necessary to have the volume mounted in a drive.
- ◆ If NetBackup requests a new volume, Media Manager looks for a volume of the requested density and assigns it to NetBackup before mounting it in a drive. Once a volume is assigned to NetBackup, other applications cannot use it until NetBackup no longer needs the backups on the volume.
- ◆ If Media Manager does not have a record of a volume suitable for the request, an error occurs and you must configure a volume to use before the operation can proceed.



Mounting and Using Volumes

Mounting a volume consists of the steps necessary to make it available for reading or writing data. After finding a volume, Media Manager mounts it as follows:

- ◆ If the volume is in a robot, Media Manager issues the commands that move the volume to a drive, position the heads to the beginning of the volume, and assign it to the request. No manual intervention is required.
- ◆ If the volume happens to be in a standalone drive and has been requested by NetBackup, Media Manager automatically mounts and assigns it. Again, no manual intervention is required.
- ◆ If the volume is not in a robot or a standalone drive, Media Manager displays a pending request in the Device Monitor. The operator must then find the volume and do one of the following:
 - Check the Device Monitor to find a suitable drive, and mount the requested volume in that drive.
 - Move the volume into the robot and update the volume configuration to reflect the correct location for the media, and resubmit the request.
- ◆ The administrator or operator can then find the required volume, insert it into the drive, and assign the drive to the request with the Device Monitor. This situation will exist, for example, if the requested volume happens to be offsite.

In robots that have barcode readers, Media Manager verifies the barcode to ensure that the robot loads the correct volume. If the barcode on the volume does not match the barcode in the Media Manager volume database, it is considered an error and the operation is stopped.

Note Media Manager is involved only in backups that are stored on removable media. If the defined NetBackup storage unit is on magnetic disk, NetBackup sends the backup to the file path specified during configuration of the storage unit and records the location in the NetBackup media database. Media Manager, in this instance, does not have a record of the storage location.

Media Manager Administration Utilities

Utilities for managing media and devices are available in the NetBackup Administration Console.

There are also some operations that may require you to use a command from the Windows command prompt (see “Media Manager Commands and Processes” on page 161). These operations are not required in normal use of NetBackup.



Starting the Media Manager Administration Utilities

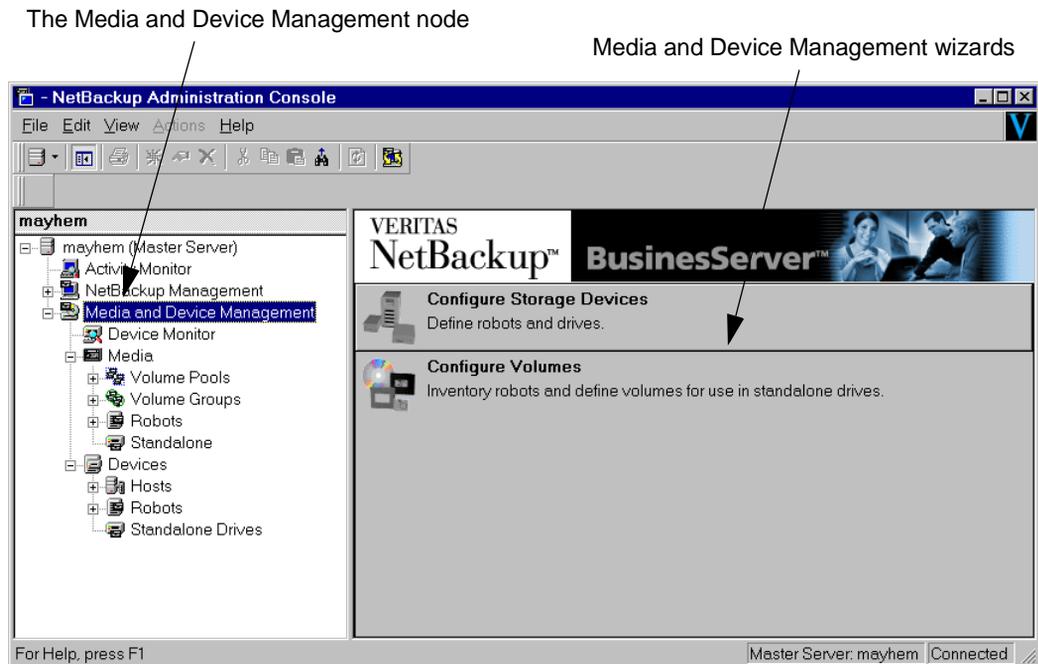
1. Log on to a Windows workstation as a member of the Administrators group.
2. From **Start > Programs**, select **VERITAS NetBackup > NetBackup Administration Console**. The NetBackup Administration Console appears on your workstation.

The NetBackup Administration Console is the starting point for administering NetBackup. The left pane of the console window has a node for each major area of NetBackup administration (including nodes for optional VERITAS products).

The right pane initially contains the NetBackup wizards that apply to each node. The figure shows the available wizards for Media Manager (the **Media and Device Management** node).

Clicking a node displays information related to that node in the right pane. The menus contain commands relevant to the selected node.

Note See the NetBackup system administrator's guide for Windows servers for details on the other NetBackup Administration Console nodes, other NetBackup administration utilities, and menu commands.



3. The **Media and Device Management** node contains the Media Manager utilities. Expand **Media and Device Management** to view these utilities.
 - Click **Device Monitor**. The device monitor has commands for monitoring the operation of storage devices.

“Monitoring Storage Devices” on page 135 explains how to use the Device Monitor.
 - Click **Media**. This node has commands for managing media.

“Managing Media” on page 43 and “Managing Media in Robots” on page 91 explain how to manage your media.
 - Click **Devices**. This node has commands for configuring and managing hosts, robots, and drives.

“Configuring Storage Devices” on page 9 explains how to configure robots and drives.

Shortcut Menus

Pressing the right-mouse button while the pointer is over sections of the NetBackup Administration Console, displays shortcut menus. Different menus appear depending on where your pointer is positioned.

Device and Media Configuration Overview

The following summarizes the steps for configuring storage devices and media. Complete your NetBackup configuration as explained in the NetBackup system administrator’s guide for Windows servers.

1. Install NetBackup software by following the instructions in the NetBackup installation program. Media Manager is installed as a part of NetBackup.
2. Use the Device Configuration Wizard (select **Configure Storage Devices** in the right pane of NetBackup Console) to configure your robots and drives. For more information, see “Using the Device Configuration Wizard to Configure Devices” on page 25.

To configure unsupported devices, you must use the menus of the **Devices** node. See “Configuring Storage Devices” on page 9.



3. Use the Volume Configuration Wizard (select **Configure Volumes** in the right pane of the NetBackup Console) to add the media that you will be using in the storage devices. This wizard configures volumes for all supported standalone drives and robots.

When you logically add a new volume (or move volumes) in a robot that supports barcodes, a scan occurs and the Media Manager volume database is updated to reflect the contents of the robotic library.

To configure volumes for unsupported devices, use the menus of the **Media** node. See “Managing Media” on page 43 and “Managing Media in Robots” on page 91 for advanced robot inventory operations.



The device management window provides the tools required to add, configure, and manage the devices that Media Manager uses.

This chapter explains how to attach drives and robotic libraries and configure Media Manager to use them. The topics in this chapter are listed below. If this is the first time you have configured devices, read the topics in the order they are presented.

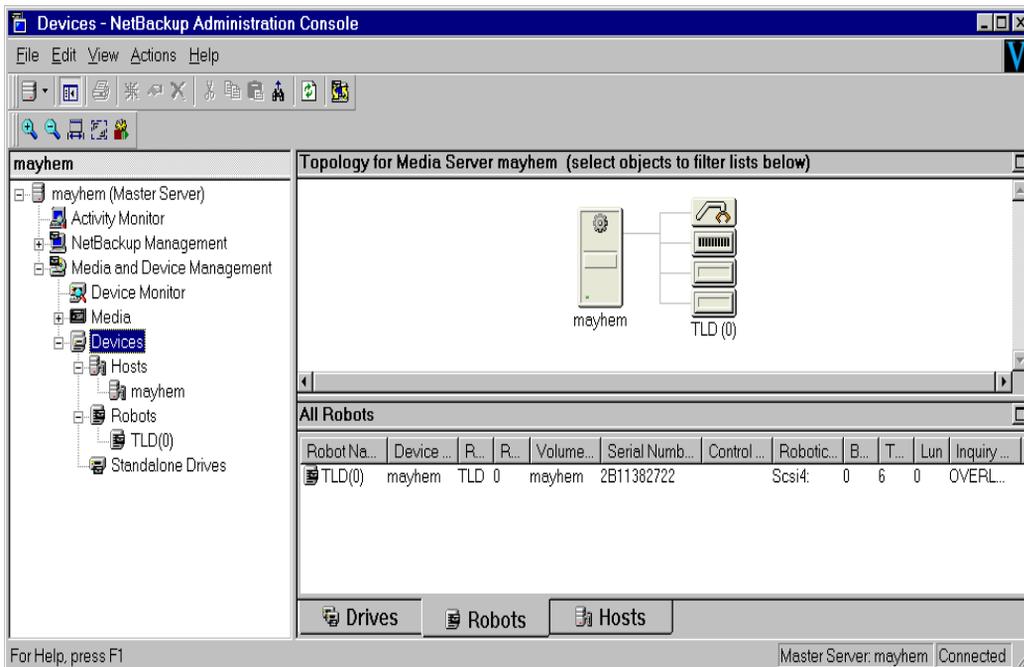
- ◆ Starting Device Management
- ◆ Using the Device Management Window
- ◆ Performing Initial Device Configuration
- ◆ Using the Device Configuration Wizard to Configure Devices
- ◆ Managing Partially-Configured Devices
- ◆ Adding Robots
- ◆ Adding Drives
- ◆ Managing Robots and Drives
- ◆ Printing Your Device Configuration
- ◆ Robot and Drive Configuration Example

Starting Device Management

In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Devices**. The device management window appears.



Device Management Window



In addition to the tree pane on the left, two panes are displayed on the right when you start device management:

- ◆ A pane showing global topology.
- ◆ A pane showing devices.

Using the Device Management Window

The following topics provide an overview of the window's contents:

- ◆ Menus and Commands
- ◆ Toolbars
- ◆ Tree Pane
- ◆ Global Topology Pane
- ◆ Devices Pane
- ◆ Status Bar
- ◆ Shortcut Menus and Commands



- ◆ Tool Tips
- ◆ Customizing the Window
- ◆ Allowable Media Manager Characters

Menus and Commands

The device management window has available the menus and commands shown in the following table.

The menu items are enabled based on the items that are currently selected in the tree pane or topology pane, or which tab is selected in the devices pane. For example, if the robot tab is selected in the devices pane and a robotic library is selected in the list, **Inventory Robot** is enabled on the **Actions** menu.

Device Management Menus and Commands

Menu	Commands
File	<p>Change Server - Displays a dialog box that allows you to change to a different host that is running NetBackup.</p> <p>New Console - Starts another instance of NetBackup Administration Console.</p> <p>New Window from Here - Starts another instance of the NetBackup Administration Console node that was active.</p> <p>Backup, Archive, and Restore - Starts the NetBackup Client utility.</p> <p>Print Setup - Displays a Windows print setup dialog.</p> <p>Print - Prints the topology pane or devices pane (when one of these panes is selected).</p> <p>Close - Closes the current window.</p> <p>Exit - Closes all open windows.</p>
Edit	<p>Contains Find commands for managing items in the display lists.</p> <p>New - Displays a dialog box to add an item of the type that is currently selected.</p> <p>Change - Displays a dialog box for changing the configuration of the selected items.</p> <p>Delete - Deletes selected items from the configuration.</p>
View	<p>Contains commands for specifying your viewing preferences for the device management window, including showing and hiding the toolbar or tree, showing and hiding robots, and refreshing the display. See “Customizing the Window” on page 21.</p>



Device Management Menus and Commands (continued)

Menu	Commands
Actions	<p>New - Displays choices for adding robots or drives to a configuration.</p> <p>Inventory Robot - Displays a dialog box with choices for performing an inventory of the selected robot or updating the volume configuration to match the contents of the robot.</p> <p>Stop/Restart Device Manager Service - Stops and restarts the NetBackup Device Manager service.</p> <p>Analyze Device Configuration - Displays a dialog box for starting the configuration analyzer. This analyzer verifies that the settings in your device configuration are consistent and checks for potential problems.</p>
Help	<p>Help Topics - Provides online help information about the NetBackup Console.</p> <p>VERITAS Web Page - Displays the VERITAS web page, if the host has a browser configured.</p> <p>License Keys - Provides information about your active and registered license keys.</p> <p>About Administration Console - Displays program information, version number, and copyright information. You can click More Info for more detailed information.</p>

Toolbars

The toolbar buttons of the device management window provide shortcuts for commands that are on the menus.

To show or hide the toolbar buttons:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Devices**.
2. Click **View > ToolBar**.

To change the display of the toolbar buttons:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Devices**.
2. Click **View > Customize > Toolbars**.

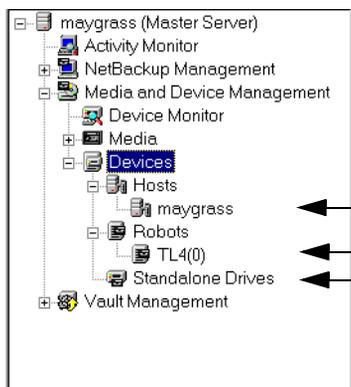
Also see “Customizing the Window” on page 21.



Tree Pane

The tree pane for **Devices** contains nodes for **Hosts**, **Robots**, and **Standalone Drives**. You can select items in the tree pane or the Topology pane in conjunction with the tabs of the Devices pane to filter the lists that are shown in the Devices pane.

The following figure shows just the tree pane and contains an expanded view of the **Devices** node:



If you select a device host, robot, or Standalone Drives, the Topology pane shows the pertinent connections highlighted and the Devices pane shows information filtered for that specific selection.

Note Selecting an item in the Tree pane (for example, a specific robot) *does not* enable the **Robots** tab in the Devices pane.

Global Topology Pane

A description bar is displayed at the top of the topology pane. Tool Tips are provided for all of the objects displayed in the topology pane. See “Tool Tips” on page 21.

The topology view shows how devices are configured to the server being administrated, by showing images of servers and devices. The topology information is taken from the Media Manager global device database and is displayed in this pane.

Topology Images

The following images may appear in the topology pane. Shared drives are a NetBackup DataCenter option.

Description

Topology Image



NetBackup media server



Robot



Robot that is partially configured



Robot media



Drive



Drive that is partially configured



Drive that is shared



Topology Connections

Connections in the topology indicate physical and logical connections of the devices, as follows:

- ◆ Media server to robotic library and drive relationships are indicated. A line attaches a robot arm to the media server that has robot control.
- ◆ Drives that are physically located in a robotic library are shown directly below the robotic library. Standalone drives are represented as individual drive objects.
- ◆ Drive to device host connections are shown only if the drive is being used for a request and the drive is in use by NetBackup. A line attaches a drive to the servers that are configured to use it. Robot to server connections and robot to volume database connections are always shown.

- ◆ Media is represented as in a robotic library. A line attaches the media to the server doing media management.
- ◆ The topology also indicates robotic library to volume database host connections.

Selecting Topology Objects

Selecting an object will highlight the connecting lines from the object to all other objects to which it is connected, as follows:

- ◆ Clicking on a drive will highlight the connection to the server it is attached.
- ◆ Clicking on a shared drive will highlight connections to all servers that are configured to use the drive.
- ◆ Clicking on a server will highlight connections to all robots, media, and drives that are connected or configured to the server.

Selecting objects in the topology pane is also one of the methods to filter the contents of the lists shown in the Devices pane.

Multiple objects of the same type can be selected by pressing the Ctrl key and selecting another object. If the Ctrl key is used and an object of a different type is selected, the selection is not allowed. If the Ctrl key is not used and an object is selected, the previous selection will be unselected.

Devices Pane

The lower right pane contains tabs for **Drives**, **Robots**, and **Hosts**. These tabs allow you to select different views of your devices. Information in the devices pane is taken from the Media Manager global device database and the local device databases.

You can use the tree pane or the topology pane in conjunction with the tabs to filter the lists shown in this pane. Selecting an item in the tree (for example, a specific robot) *does not* enable the **Robots** tab in the devices pane.

Managing the Devices Pane

The **Edit** menu has commands for finding items and is useful if you are managing many devices. You can use **View > Columns > Layout** to rearrange or hide the columns in this display. Some of the columns are initially hidden by default.

Using the Drives Tab

The drives list allows you to view detailed information about drives configured with NetBackup.



To update the drives list with more detailed information, a drive must be selected in the topology pane. You can select a drive in the topology explicitly or implicitly by selecting a robotic library. The drives list will then be updated with the objects selected in the topology.

The following table describes the columns in the drives list:

Drives List

Column	Description
Drive Name	Contains the configured name of the drive.
Device Host	Contains the name of the device host where this drive is attached.
Drive Type	Contains the type of drive. For example, 4MM. If the drive is partially configured, PCD is shown. See “Managing Partially-Configured Devices” on page 27 for details.
Robot Type	Specifies the type of robot that contains this drive. For example, TL4. NONE in this column means that the drive is a standalone drive. If the robot is partially configured, PCR is shown. See “Managing Partially-Configured Devices” on page 27 for details.
Robot Number	Contains the number of the robot. If the robot type is NONE, this column is blank.
Robot Drive Number	Specifies the number of the drive in the robot. This number is only present for robot types that are not ACS, TLH, and TLM.
Vendor Drive Name	For TLH robots, this column contains the DAS drive name. For TLH robots, this contains the IBM device name. This column is not applicable for NetBackup BusinessServer.
ACS	Contains the index (in ACS library software terms) that identifies the robot that has this drive. This column is not applicable for NetBackup BusinessServer.
LSM	Contains the ACS Library Storage Module that has this drive. This column is not applicable for NetBackup BusinessServer.
Panel	Contains the ACS robot panel where this drive is located. This column is not applicable for NetBackup BusinessServer.



Drives List (continued)

Column	Description
Drive	Contains the physical number of the drive (in ACS library software terms). This column is not applicable for NetBackup BusinessServer.
Drive Path	Contains the path for the drive, for example, Tape5.
Serial Number	Contains the drive serial number, if the drive reports one.
World Wide ID	Contains a unique identifier that is assigned to each device. Some drives may not report this identifier.
Shared	This column is used for the shared storage option (SSO) feature. Yes, means this drive is configured as a shared drive. No, means the drive is not a shared drive. For NetBackup BusinessServer this column contains No, since this feature is not supported.
Drive Status	Contains the current status of the drive.
Port	Contains the SCSI port number (if the robot is connected to a Windows server).
Bus	Contains the SCSI bus number (if the robot is connected to a Windows server).
Target	Contains the SCSI target number (or SCSI ID) (if the robot is connected to a Windows server).
Lun	Contains the SCSI logical unit number of the robot (if the robot is connected to a Windows server).
Time Mounted	Contains the time the drive was first mounted.
Total Time	Contains the total mount time (in hours).
Cleaning Frequency	Contains the cleaning frequency for the drive, in hours.
Last Cleaning Time	Contains the date that the drive was last cleaned.
Volume Header Device	This column applies only to optical disk drives on certain UNIX hosts and specifies the volume header device path for the drive. This column is not applicable for NetBackup BusinessServer.



Drives List (continued)

Column	Description
Drive Comments	Contains any user comments added for the drive.
Inquiry Information	Contains device information returned from the device. This information is used to identify the device. For example, vendor ID, product ID, and product revision.
NDMP Host	Contains the name of the NDMP control host.
Drive Index	Drive index assigned to the drive during configuration.

Using the Robots Tab

The robots list allows you to view detailed information about robots configured with NetBackup. Initially, all robots in the global device database are listed in the robot list. However, only information found in the global device database will be displayed in the list.

To update the robot list with more detailed information, a robot must be selected in the topology pane or in the tree pane. You can select a robot in the topology explicitly or implicitly by selecting a drive in the robot or the device host that the robot is connected to. The list will then be updated with the objects selected in the topology.

The following table describes the columns in the robots list:

Robots List

Column	Description
Robot Name	Contains the type and number of the robot, for example TLM(3). If the robot is partially configured, PCR is shown. For example, PCR(3). See “Managing Partially-Configured Devices” on page 27 for details.
Device Host	Contains the name of the device host where this robot is attached.
Robot Type	Contains the type of robot. If the robot is partially-configured, PCR is shown. See “Media Manager Robot Types” on page 213 for a list of supported robot types.
Robot Number	Number of the robot.



Robots List (continued)

Column	Description
Volume Database Host	Contains the name of the volume database host that is used to track the volumes in this robot
Serial Number	Contains the robot serial number.
Robotic Path	Contains the path for the robot, for example, changer0.
Robot Control Host	Contains the name of the host that is providing the robotic control.
Port	Contains the SCSI port number (if the robot is connected to a Windows server).
Bus	Contains the SCSI bus number (if the robot is connected to a Windows server).
Target	Contains the SCSI target number (or SCSI ID) (if the robot is connected to a Windows server).
Lun	Contains the logical unit number of the robot (if the robot is connected to a Windows server).
Inquiry String	Contains device information returned from the device. This information is used to identify the device. For example, vendor ID, product ID, and product revision.

Using the Hosts Tab

The hosts list allows you to view detailed information about the hosts that are referenced in your Media Manager configuration.

To update the hosts list with more detailed information, a host must be selected in the topology pane or in the tree pane. You can select a host in the topology explicitly or implicitly by selecting a robot. The hosts list will then be updated with the objects selected in the topology.

The following table describes the columns in the hosts list:

Hosts List

Column	Description
Host Name	Contains the name of the device host.



Hosts List (continued)

Column	Description
Connection Status	Contains the current NetBackup connection status for this host. This status field contains Connected, Not Connected, or the text of a possible connection error message.
Standalone Volume Database Host	Contains the name of the volume database host for all of the standalone drives controlled by this device host.
Version	Contains the NetBackup software version.

Status Bar

The status bar appears at the bottom of the NetBackup Console window. The status bar

- ◆ Shows tool tips (if tool tips are enabled).
- ◆ Indicates the name of the master server.
- ◆ Indicates if you are connected to the master server.

To show or hide the status bar

- ❖ Click **View > Status Bar**.

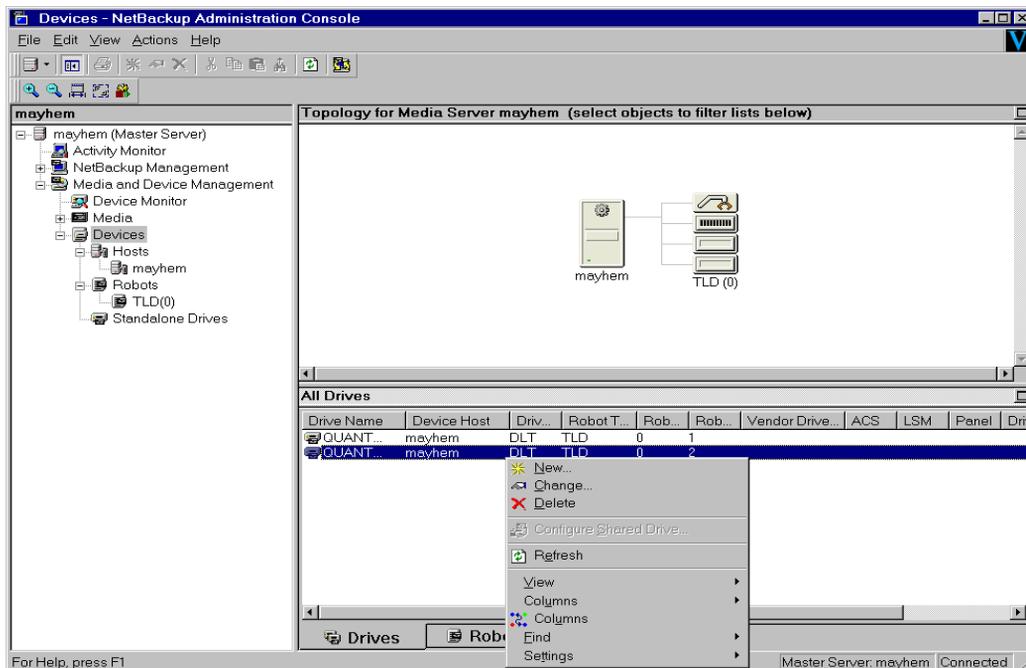
Shortcut Menus and Commands

Clicking the right mouse button while the pointer is over a pane or a selection of a pane, displays a shortcut menu with commands that apply to that context. These shortcut commands are also available on the menus or toolbars.

These shortcut menus work in the context of what device is currently selected in the tree pane or topology pane, or which tab is selected in the devices pane.



Short Cut Menu



Tool Tips

Tooltips are helpful information for the toolbar buttons, or items in the topology pane (as you position the pointer).

To enable tool tips

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Devices**.
2. Click **View > Customize**.
3. On the **Toolbars** tab, select **Show ToolTips**.

Customizing the Window

The **View** menu has options for sorting and changing the layout and appearance of the panes.



Showing or Hiding Columns

You can use **View > Columns > Layout** to show or hide columns in this display.

Rearranging Columns

You can use **View > Columns > Layout** to rearrange the order of columns in this display.

Changing the View of the Topology Pane

Click **View > Options > Devices** and select **Fit topology to window on startup**. This will fit the topology diagram to the pane and not use the default size on start up.

Click **View > Zoom > Zoom In** to enlarge the topology diagrams. This can be done multiple times.

Click **View > Zoom > Zoom Out** to decrease the size of the topology diagrams. This can be done multiple times.

Click **View > Zoom > Fit Window** to size the topology diagram to the size of the current pane.

Click **View > Zoom > Overview Window** to select and focus on a portion of the topology diagram.

Allowable Media Manager Characters

The following set of characters can be used in user-defined names, such as drive comments and drive names that you enter when creating these entities. These characters must be used even when specifying these items in foreign languages.

Do not use a minus as the first character or leave any spaces between characters.

- ◆ Alphabetic (A-Z a-z)
- ◆ Numeric (0-9)
- ◆ Period (.)
- ◆ Plus (+)
- ◆ Minus (-)
- ◆ Underscore (_)

Performing Initial Device Configuration

The following steps describe a general method for attaching devices to a Windows device host. The device applets on the Windows server that you use in these steps may be different.

1. Use the appropriate Windows applet to obtain information on any currently attached SCSI devices.
2. If you are attaching a new robotic library or drive to a Media Manager device host, follow the manufacturer's instructions for attaching the device.
3. Shut down the device host and physically attach the supported device, ensuring that SCSI targets and termination settings are consistent with adapter card and peripheral vendor recommendations.
4. Reboot the host and answer the prompts for adapter card peripheral configuration options. Watch the display to ensure that the adapter card recognizes the attached peripherals.

Note Some devices (for example, Quantum DLT4500) may require that nonzero logical unit numbers are enabled in the adapter card configuration.

5. If you are adding drives, install the tape drivers and use the appropriate Windows applet to verify that the drive was recognized.

You can download the latest tape drivers and tape installer from <http://support.veritas.com>.

Search on the keywords *tape device installer*. These drivers support the tape devices listed in the compatibility lists on this web site.

`NetBackupTapeDeviceDriverInstall.exe` will run only if NetBackup has been installed.

Note If you are adding Sony AIT drives, the settings for dip switches 1-4 should be left at the default setting (all switches off).

6. Add the storage devices to your Media Manager configuration. If this is the first time you have configured Media Manager devices, note the following:
 - a. Depending on what type of device you are adding, proceed to one of the following topics:
 - "Using the Device Configuration Wizard to Configure Devices" on page 25.



- “Adding Robots” on page 27.
 - “Adding Drives” on page 33.
- b.** Make your device configuration changes. If you use the Device Configuration wizard, the following step is done by the wizard.
- Stop and restart the NetBackup Device Manager service using **Actions > Stop/Restart Device Manager**.

Media Manager Security

For Media Manager to access devices on another host, it may be necessary to add a `SERVER` entry to the `vm.conf` file on the remote host (or you can use the Host properties node in the NetBackup Administration Console to add an entry).

`SERVER` entries are used for security. Without any `SERVER` entries and authentication not enabled, *any* host can manage the devices on the host. You can add entries allowing only specific hosts to remotely access the devices.

If the <code>vm.conf</code> file on a remote host contains	Then
---	-------------

No <code>SERVER</code> entries and authentication is not enabled	Any host can manage the devices on this host. It is not necessary to make any additions to <code>vm.conf</code> .
--	---

<code>SERVER</code> entries	You must add a <code>SERVER</code> entry for the host where you are running the NetBackup Administration Console (if it is not present).
-----------------------------	--

`vmd` is the NetBackup Volume Manager service. Device configuration changes, even those made local to a server, may require `vmd` to be running. It is recommended that `vmd` be running at all times, including when changes are being made to the Media Manager device configuration.

vmd Considerations

Media Manager authentication/authorization may affect systems where NetBackup authentication/authorization has been enabled.

Connections to `vmd` will fail if authentication/authorization are enabled, an `AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED` entry is present in `vm.conf`, and the caller of `vmd` does not have the required permission to use `vmd` functions.

If authentication/authorization is needed in NetBackup but not in Media Manager, you can do one of the following:



- ◆ Add `SERVER` entries in `vm.conf`.
 - ◆ Have no `SERVER` and no `AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED` entries in `vm.conf`.
- See “vmd Security” on page 236 for more information.

Example `SERVER` Entries

Assume that we have three hosts, named `eel`, `yak`, and `shark`; and that NetBackup authentication is not enabled.

We want to centralize device management on host `shark` and also permit each host to manage its own devices.

- ◆ The `vm.conf` file on `shark` contains

```
SERVER = shark
```

The `vm.conf` file on `shark` does not require any additional `SERVER` entries, because all device management for `shark` will be performed from `shark`.

- ◆ The `vm.conf` file on `eel` contains

```
SERVER = eel
SERVER = shark
```

This allows `eel` to manage its own devices and also permits `shark` to access them.

- ◆ The `vm.conf` file on `yak` contains

```
SERVER = yak
SERVER = shark
```

This allows `yak` to manage its own devices and also permits `shark` to access them.

Using the Device Configuration Wizard to Configure Devices

Using the Device Configuration wizard is the recommended method of configuring robots and drives. This wizard performs better if the robots and drives that you are configuring support complete device serialization. This wizard does *not* support the following devices:

- ◆ RSM robots and drives. The wizard can discover RSM changers, but configures them as native SCSI devices not as RSM Media Manager robot types.
- ◆ Robots and drives for use with NetBackup for NDMP.



To configure these unsupported devices, see “Adding Robots” on page 27 and “Adding Drives” on page 33.

All information required for full auto-configuration may not be available on some systems. In this case, the wizard will do as much as possible with the limited device information. Later you need to manually configure the remaining devices.

If tape drives are in use or offline, they cannot be discovered.

Starting the Wizard

The Device Configuration wizard is available from the list of wizards displayed in the right pane of the **Media and Device Management** window.

Click **Media and Device Management > Configure Storage Devices**.

In some cases the wizard may leave some devices partially configured. See “Managing Partially-Configured Devices” on page 27 for more information.

Rerunning the Wizard

Rerunning the Device Configuration wizard updates the Media Manager configuration. For example, adding a new SCSI adapter may change the path to a robotic library. A similar change to the configuration may occur if you add a new drive.

The Device Configuration wizard updates the Media Manager configuration to match the new configuration.

External Device Mapping Files

These text files are used by the Device Configuration wizard to automatically discover and configure new devices. External mapping files exist for robots and drives.

This means that in some cases, device discovery support for your new or upgraded devices may be accomplished without waiting for a patch from VERITAS. Support for some new devices only requires that you download an updated external mapping file when any device changes are made to your configuration.

Note These files do not indicate support for any of the devices, only the ability to recognize and automatically configure them.

Obtaining External Device Mapping Files

Visit the VERITAS support web site (<http://support.veritas.com>) to download the latest external device mapping files for your devices.

Refer to the supplied README file for instructions. The files that you download will be named similar to the following files: MAPPINGS_4.5_nnnnnn.TAR and MAPPINGS_4.5_nnnnnn.ZIP

Managing Partially-Configured Devices

Under certain conditions, for example an unsupported robotic library or drive, the Device Configuration wizard may leave some devices as partially configured.

Also if you unselect a discovered device from the tree view of the wizard, will cause the device to be configured as partially configured.

Partially-configured drives are designated by PCD and partially-configured robots by PCR in the Devices window pane.

See “Using the Drives Tab” on page 15 and “Using the Robots Tab” on page 18.

If this happens it is best to ensure that you have downloaded the most recent external mapping files from the VERITAS support web site (see “External Device Mapping Files” on page 26).

Adding Robots

Note Using the Device Configuration wizard is the recommended method of configuring robots. See “Using the Device Configuration Wizard to Configure Devices” on page 25 for wizard restrictions and more information.

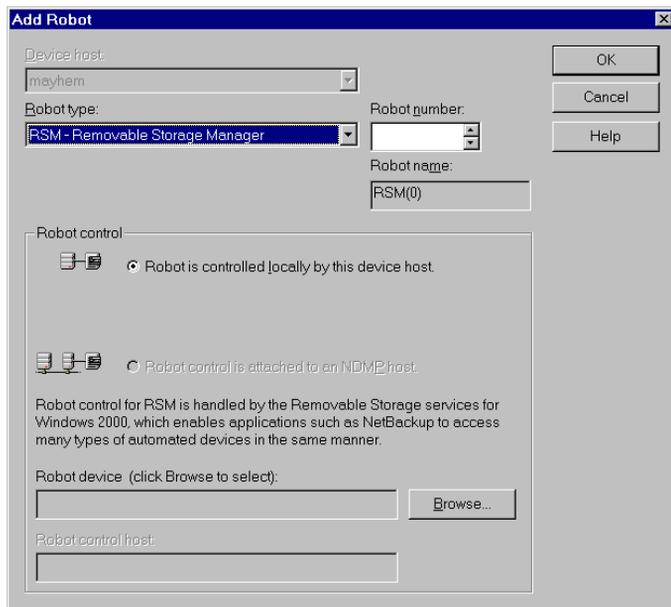
When adding a robotic library and drives, the best method is to add the robotic library first, as explained in this procedure and then add the drives (see “Adding Drives” on page 33).

Note For NetBackup BusinessServer, only one robot per server is allowed.

1. Perform the steps explained in “Performing Initial Device Configuration” on page 23.
2. In the NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Devices**.
3. Select **Actions > New > Robot**.



A dialog box for adding a robotic library appears. The properties that appear in this dialog box vary depending on the host platform type and robot type.



4. Specify the properties for the robotic library as explained in “Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Robots” on page 28.
5. Click **OK**.

A prompt appears asking whether you want to stop and restart the NetBackup Device Manager service (this also stops and restarts any robotic processes). If your changes are complete, answer yes to this prompt.

Note It is possible that stopping and restarting this service will abort any backups, archives, or restores that are in progress.

Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Robots

The following topics describe the properties that you specify when you add a robotic library or change a robot configuration. Note that some of these properties apply only to specific robots or host platforms.

Device Host

Note This property does not apply to NetBackup BusinessServer.

Specifies the host to which you are adding the robotic library. To specify a host, click the **arrow** and select a host from the list.

To choose a device host that is not in the list, click the browse button (...). In the dialog box that then appears, specify the name of the host you want.

Robot Type

Specifies the type of robot that you are adding. Click the **arrow** and select from the list of types that Media Manager supports.

Visit the VERITAS support web site (<http://www.support.veritas.com>) to locate the robot type to use for specific vendors and models.

Microsoft Windows 2000 Removable Storage Manager (RSM)

If you want to use the RSM robot type, review the following important points:

- ◆ Your device host must be running Windows 2000.
- ◆ You want the Microsoft Removable Storage Manager to control the robot, rather than Media Manager.
- ◆ A robotic library configured as an RSM robot, cannot also be used as a Media Manager direct-controlled (SCSI) robot (for example, TLD).
- ◆ Shared drives cannot be configured in an RSM robot.
- ◆ For more information on configuring and using RSM robots, see the appendix, “Microsoft Removable Storage Manager (RSM)” on page 269.

Robot Number

Specifies a unique, logical identification number for the robotic library. This number identifies the robotic library in displays (for example, TLD (21)) and also is used when adding media for the robot to the Media Manager configuration.

Volume Database Host

Note This property does not apply to NetBackup BusinessServer.



Specifies the name of the host where Media Manager keeps the volume configuration information about the media in the robotic library.

You can specify any host that has Media Manager installed as the volume database host, even if the host does not have any drives or robots attached. Click the **arrow** and select from the list of hosts listed.

Robot Control

In the Robot control section, you specify the control for the robot. Depending on the robot type you are adding and the type of device host, various combinations of the robot control buttons are available in the dialog.

The following table provides an overview of configuring robot control, based on robot type and the device host platform type. The third column in the table indicates the robot control button that is valid for that particular robot type and platform, as follows:

- ◆ **Robot is controlled locally by this device host** (Local)
- ◆ **Robot control is handled by a remote host** (Remote)
- ◆ **Robot control is attached to an NDMP host** (NDMP)

For NetBackup BusinessServer, **Robot control is handled by a remote host** is not supported and is not available. See the NetBackup release notes or visit the VERITAS support web site for more detailed information on supported platforms and other NetBackup product limitations.

Robot Control Configuration Overview

Robot Type	Valid Device Host Platform	Robot Control	Information Required for Configuration
ACS	Any (except UNIX Auspex and Linux)	Remote	ACSLS host
LMF	UNIX Solaris	Local	Library name
LMF	UNIX Solaris	Remote	Robot control host
ODL	UNIX (except Linux)	Local	Robotic device file
RSM	Windows 2000	Local	Robot device
TL4, TL8, TLD TS8, TSD, TSH	UNIX	Local	Robotic device file



Robot Control Configuration Overview (continued)

Robot Type	Valid Device Host Platform	Robot Control	Information Required for Configuration
TL4, TL8, TLD TS8, TSD	Windows	Local	Robot device
TL8	Any (except UNIX NCR)	Remote	Robot control host
TLD	Any	Remote	Robot control host
TL8, TLD, TSD	Windows UNIX AIX UNIX Solaris UNIX HP/UX	NDMP	NDMP host name Robot device
TLH	UNIX AIX	Local	LMCP device file
TLH	UNIX (except AIX and Linux)	Local	Library name
TLH	Windows (Intel only)	Local	Library name
TLH	Any (except Linux)	Remote	Robot control host
TLM	Any	Remote	DAS server

Robot is controlled locally by this device host

For this type of robot control, you have the following possibilities based on the robot type and device host platform that you selected.

Robotic Device File

When adding a robot to UNIX device hosts, specify the robotic device file path as follows. This file is used for a SCSI connection and is located in the `/dev` directory tree on the device host.

1. Click **Browse** and then select a robotic device file from the list that appears in the Devices dialog box. When you click **OK**, your selection will be placed in the Robotic device file box.
2. If the browse operation fails to find and display all of the attached robots, click **Other Device** to display a dialog box that allows you to enter the path of the device file. Your entry will be placed in the Robotic device file box.



If the browse operation does not find any attached robots, you will see an error dialog box.

If the device file entry does not exist, create the entry as explained in the NetBackup Media Manager device configuration guide for UNIX.

Robot Device

When adding a robot to Windows device hosts, specify the robot as follows.

For information on adding RSM robots, see the appendix, “Microsoft Removable Storage Manager (RSM)” on page 269.

Click **Browse** and then select a device from the list that appears in the Devices dialog box. If the browse operation does not find any attached robots, you will see an error dialog box.

Selecting a robot in the Devices dialog and clicking **OK** will set different values in the Robot Control text box depending on the type of Windows device host. The following table shows the settings in the first column for the type of device host listed in the second column:

Robot Control text box Setting	Type of Windows Device Host
SCSI Port, Bus, Target, and LUN numbers	Windows NT hosts
SCSI Port, Bus, Target, and LUN numbers	Windows 2000 hosts where a changer driver <i>is not</i> in control of the robot
Device name (for example, Changer1)	Windows 2000 hosts where a changer driver <i>is</i> in control of the robot

Robot control is attached to an NDMP host

For this type of robot control, you specify the following:

Robot Device

Specify the robot device that is attached to the NDMP host.

Click **Browse** to select a robot device from the list in the Devices dialog.

NDMP Host Name

Enter the name of the NDMP host where the robot is attached.



Adding Drives

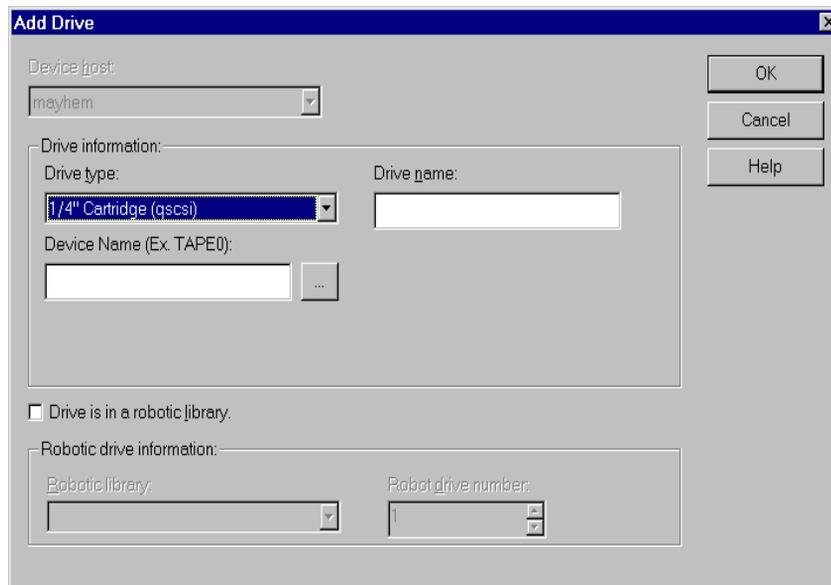
Note Using the Device Configuration wizard is the recommended method of configuring drives. See “Using the Device Configuration Wizard to Configure Devices” on page 25 for wizard restrictions and more information.

The following procedure explains how to add drives using device management menus:

Note For NetBackup BusinessServer, a maximum of two drives per server is allowed.

1. Perform the steps necessary for the host to recognize the attached drives (see “Performing Initial Device Configuration” on page 23).
2. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Devices**.
3. Select **Actions > New > Drive**.

The properties that appear in this dialog box vary slightly, depending on the type of host platform and robot type.



4. Specify the properties of the drive as explained in “Dialog Box Entries for Adding or Changing Drives” on page 34.



5. Click **OK**.

The display now shows the new drive information.

Note The initial drive status is up, so the drive is available as soon as you add it and restart `ltid`. To change the status of the drive, click **Device Monitor**.

A prompt appears asking whether you want to stop and restart the NetBackup Device Manager service (this also stops and restarts any robotic processes). If your changes are complete, answer yes to this prompt.

Note It is possible that stopping and restarting this service will abort any backups, archives, or restores that are in progress.

Dialog Box Entries for Adding or Changing Drives

The following are the properties that you can specify when adding a drive or changing the properties of a drive. Some of these properties apply only to specific types of drives or host platforms.

Device Host Section

Note This property does not apply to NetBackup BusinessServer.

Specifies the host to which you are adding the drive. The host that is shown initially in the box is the device host you selected earlier in the tree pane.

Drive Information Section

Drive Type

Specifies the type of drive that you are adding. Click the **arrow** and select from the list of the drive types that Media Manager supports.

See “Media Manager Media Types” on page 214 for more information.

Drive Name

Enter a name that will be used by Media Manager to identify the drive. Descriptive names are recommended and the name *must* be unique.

Device Name

Note Applies only to Windows servers.

Enter the name of the drive as it is recognized by the Windows server. Enter the name in the box, or click the browse button to display the Devices dialog box, where you can select from the drives that are currently attached to this host.

You can also get the device name for the drive from the appropriate Windows applet.

No Rewind Device

Note Applies only to UNIX servers.

Enter the no rewind device file path for the drive or click the button to the right to display a dialog box from which you can select a device file.

Although both no rewind and rewind device files are usually available, Media Manager requires only the no rewind on close device file.

Device files are located in the `/dev` directory on the UNIX host. If the device files do not exist, create them as explained in the NetBackup Media Manager device configuration guide for UNIX.

A no rewind device remains at its current position on a close operation. Usually the device file name is preceded or followed by the letter `n`.

If you are using NDMP drives, see the NetBackup for NDMP system administrator's guide for configuration information.

Character Device

Note Applies only to optical disk drives on NetBackup DataCenter UNIX servers, and does not apply to NetBackup DataCenter Windows servers or NetBackup BusinessServer.

Enter the Character Device file path for the drive.

Character device files are in the `/dev` directory on the UNIX host. If the entries do not exist, you can create them as explained in the NetBackup Media Manager device configuration guide for UNIX. Media Manager uses character mode device files.



Volume Header Device

Note Applies only to optical disk drives on NetBackup DataCenter UNIX servers, and does not apply to NetBackup DataCenter Windows servers or NetBackup BusinessServer.

Enter the Volume Header Device path for the drive. This file is in the `/dev` directory on the UNIX host. If the entry does not exist, create it as explained in the NetBackup Media Manager device configuration guide for UNIX.

Drive Is In A Robotic Library

Select **Drive is in a robotic library** to specify that the drive is under robotic control and then enter information in the Robotic drive information section of the dialog.

Clear **Drive is in a robotic library** for standalone (nonrobotic) drives.

Robotic Drive Information Section

Robotic Library

This box specifies the robotic library that will control the drive.

Robot Drive Number

Specifies the physical location within the robotic library of the drive.

Set this to the number that correlates to the location of the drive that you are adding. When adding more than one drive to a robot, you can add the physical drives in any order. For example, in a TS8 robot you can add drive 2 before drive 1.

If you assign the wrong number Media Manager does not detect it, but an error occurs when the robotic control attempts to mount media on the wrong drive. To determine the correct number, you must know which physical drive in the robot is identified by the logical device name (Windows) or device file (UNIX) that you specify in this dialog box.

See “Correlating Device Files to Physical Drives When Adding Drives” on page 222 for more information.

Managing Robots and Drives

The following topics explain how to manage your robots and drives:

- ◆ Changing a Robot Configuration



- ◆ Changing the Configuration of a Drive
- ◆ Deleting Robots
- ◆ Deleting Drives

Rerunning the Device Configuration wizard updates the Media Manager configuration. For example, adding a new SCSI adapter may change the path to a robotic library. A similar change to the configuration may occur if you add a new drive or robotic library.

The Device Configuration wizard updates the Media Manager configuration to match the new configuration. See “Using the Device Configuration Wizard to Configure Devices” on page 25.

Changing a Robot Configuration

Caution If you install more than two drives in a robot, the robot will not function. This is true even if you do not configure the additional drives in Media Manager. Two drives in a robot is the maximum for NetBackup BusinessServer.

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Devices**.
2. Select the **Robots** tab in the Devices pane.
3. Select the robotic library you want to change.
4. Select **Edit > Change**.

A dialog box appears, showing the current information for the selected robotic library.

5. Make the desired changes (see “Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Robots” on page 28).
6. Click **OK**.

A prompt asks whether you want to stop and restart the NetBackup Device Manager service (this also stops and restarts any robotic processes). If your changes are complete, answer yes to this prompt.

Note It is possible that stopping and restarting this service will abort any backups, archives, or restores that are in progress.



Changing the Configuration of a Drive

To change information for a drive, use the following procedure:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Devices**.
2. Select the **Drives** tab in the Devices pane.
3. Select the drive you want to change.
4. Select **Edit > Change**.
 - a. A dialog box appears showing the current information for the selected drive. Make the desired changes (see “Dialog Box Entries for Adding or Changing Drives” on page 34).
 - b. Click **OK**.

A prompt appears asking whether you want to stop and restart the NetBackup Device Manager service (this also stops and restarts any robotic processes). If your changes are complete, answer yes to this prompt.

Note It is possible that stopping and restarting this service will abort any backups, archives, or restores that are in progress.

Deleting Robots

Any drives that were configured as residing in the deleted robot are changed to standalone drives.

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Devices**.
2. Select the **Robots** tab in the Devices pane.
3. Select the robotic library you want to delete.
4. Select **Edit > Delete**.
5. Answer the delete confirmation dialog.



Deleting Drives

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Devices**.
2. Select the **Drives** tab in the Devices pane.
3. Select the drive you want to delete.
4. Select **Edit > Delete**.
5. Answer the delete confirmation dialog.

Printing Your Device Configuration

To print your current Media Manager device configuration, do the following:

1. In the Devices pane, click on **Drives, Robots, or Hosts**.
2. Select **File > Print**.

To print the device configuration topology diagram, do the following:

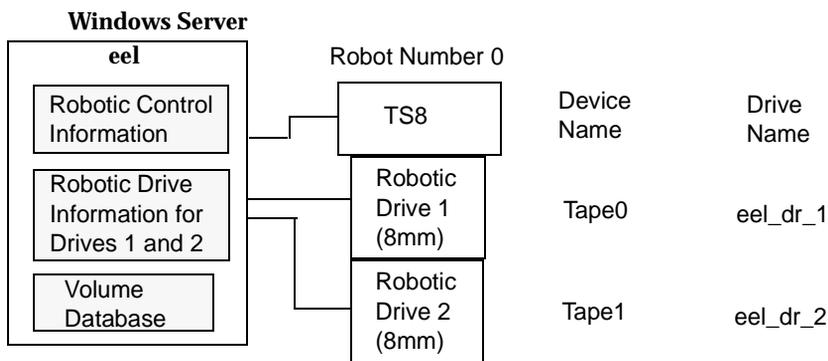
1. Click in the Topology pane.
2. Select **File > Print**.

You can also use the `tpconfig` command (located in `install_path\Volmgr\bin\`) to print the device configuration for a host. The following example lists the device configuration and redirects the output to the file `devconf.txt`, which you can then print:

```
tpconfig -d > devconf.txt
```



Robot and Drive Configuration Example



This is a configuration with a tape stacker containing two 8mm tape drives. The robot and drives are connected to a host running Windows.

After installing Media Manager software and attaching the drives, run the Device Configuration wizard or complete the Add Robot and Add Drive dialog box entries as shown in the following tables.

Add Robot Dialog Entries

Robot Type	TS8 - Tape Stacker 8MM
Robot Number	0
Robot Device	<p>Selecting a robot device sets the SCSI Port, Bus, Target, and LUN numbers in the dialog for Windows NT hosts and for Windows 2000 hosts where a changer driver <i>is not</i> in control of the robot.</p> <p>On Windows 2000 hosts where a changer driver <i>is</i> in control of the robot, selecting a robot device sets the changer name in the dialog.</p>

Add Drive Dialog Entries (Tape0)

Drive Type	8mm Cartridge (8mm)
Drive Name	eel_dr_1



Add Drive Dialog Entries (Tape0) (continued)

Device Name	Tape0
Drive is in a Robotic Library	Yes
Robotic Library	TS8(0) - eel
Robot Drive Number	1

Add Drive Dialog Entries (Tape1)

Drive Type	8mm Cartridge (8mm)
Drive Name	eel_dr_2
Device Name	Tape1
Drive is in a Robotic Library	Yes
Robotic Library	TS8(0) - eel
Robot Drive Number	2





The media management window provides the tools required to add and manage the removable media that Media Manager controls. These media are referred to as volumes.

This chapter explains how to add and manage the removable media that Media Manager controls. These media are referred to as volumes, and are assigned media IDs and other attributes that are required to track and manage them.

The chapter, “Managing Media in Robots” on page 91 explains how to manage media in robots.

If you have Backup Exec volumes to manage, see the Backup Exec tape reader option appendix of the NetBackup system administrator’s guide for Windows for more information.

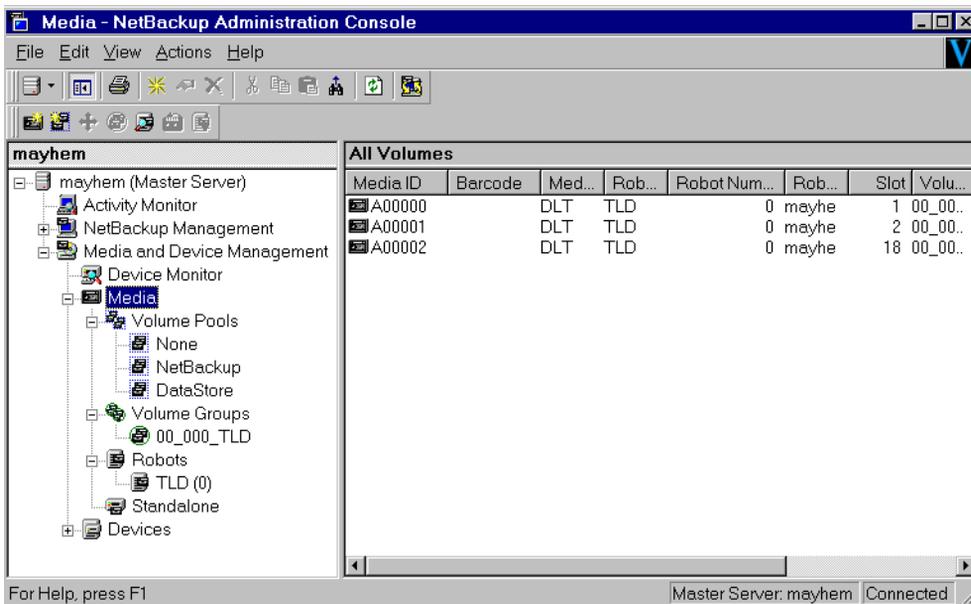
Starting Media Management

In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.

The media management window appears.



Media Management Window



In addition to the tree pane displayed on the left, a volume pane is displayed on the right when you start media management.

Using the Media Management Window

The following topics describe the media management window:

- ◆ Menus and Commands
- ◆ Toolbars
- ◆ Tree Pane
- ◆ Volumes Pane
- ◆ Status Bar
- ◆ Shortcut Menus and Commands
- ◆ Tool Tips
- ◆ Customizing the Window
- ◆ Allowable Media Manager Characters



Menus and Commands

The media management window has available the menus and commands shown in the following table.

The menu items are enabled based on the items that are currently selected in the tree pane or volumes pane. For example, if a volume group is selected in the tree pane, **Delete** is enabled on the **Edit** menu.

Media Management Menus and Commands

Menu	Commands
File	<p>Change Server - Displays a dialog box that allows you to change to a different host that is running NetBackup.</p> <p>New Console - Starts another instance of NetBackup Administration Console.</p> <p>New Window from Here - Starts another instance of the NetBackup Administration Console node that was active.</p> <p>Backup, Archive, and Restore - Starts the NetBackup backup, archive, and restore interface.</p> <p>Print Setup - Displays the standard Windows print setup dialog.</p> <p>Print - Prints the volumes pane (when the pane is selected).</p> <p>Close - Closes the current window.</p> <p>Exit - Closes all open windows.</p>
Edit	<p>Contains Find commands for managing items in the volume lists.</p> <p>New - Displays a dialog box to add an item of the type that is currently selected.</p> <p>Change - Displays a dialog box for changing the configuration of the selected items.</p> <p>Delete - Deletes selected items from the configuration.</p>
View	<p>Contains commands for specifying your viewing preferences for the media management window, including showing and hiding the toolbar or tree, and refreshing the display. See “Customizing the Window” on page 54.</p>



Media Management Menus and Commands (continued)

Menu	Commands
Actions	<p>New - Displays a dialog box for adding volumes or volume pools to a configuration.</p> <p>Change Volume Group - Displays a dialog box for changing the volume group for selected volumes.</p> <p>Move - Displays a dialog box for moving volumes.</p> <p>Rescan/Update Barcodes - Rescans the barcodes in the selected robotic library and updates the barcodes for the selected volumes, as necessary.</p> <p>Eject Volume(s) From Robot - Ejects selected single or multiple volumes to the robot's media access port.</p> <p>Inventory Robot - Displays a dialog box with choices for performing an inventory of the selected robot or updating the volume configuration to match the contents of the robot.</p>
Help	<p>Help Topics - Provides online help information about the NetBackup Console.</p> <p>VERITAS Web Page - Displays the VERITAS web page, if the host has a browser configured.</p> <p>License Keys - Provides information about your active and registered license keys.</p> <p>About Administration Console - Displays program information, version number, and copyright information. You can click More Info for more detailed information.</p>

Toolbars

The toolbar buttons of the Media window provide shortcuts for commands that are on the menus.

To show or hide the toolbar buttons:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. Click **View > ToolBar**.

To change the display of the toolbar buttons:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. Click **View > Customize > Toolbars**.

Also see “Customizing the Window” on page 54.



Tree Pane

The tree pane for **Media** contains nodes for **Volume Pools**, **Volume Groups**, **Robots**, and **Standalone**.

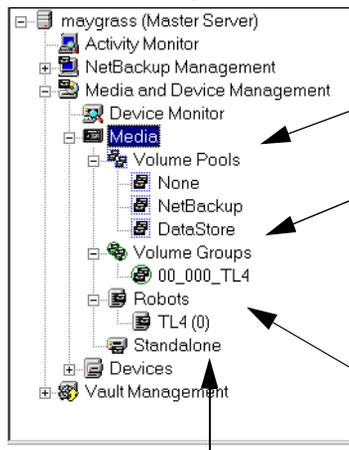
The display in the Volumes pane (on the right) shows the volumes that are in the volume database on this server. If you add any volumes, they are added to this volume database.

If there are no volumes configured in the volume database, the Volumes pane will be blank. Selecting different items in the tree pane filters the lists that are shown in the Volumes pane.

To view or configure volumes on another server, change your connection to that host by using **File > Change Server**. See “Administering Media on Other Hosts” on page 54 for more information.

The following figure shows an expanded view of the Media tree pane:

The current Media Manager server. You are currently connected to this host. Volumes that appear in the Volumes pane are in the volume database on this server.



All the volume pools in the volume database on the current server. If you select Volume Pools, the Volumes pane contains information for all the volumes in all pools. Selecting an individual pool, displays only the volumes in that pool.

All the volume groups in the volume database on the current server. If you select Volume Groups, the Volumes pane contains information for all the volumes in all groups. Selecting an individual group, displays only the volumes in that group.

If you select Robots, the Volumes pane contains information for all the volumes that are in all robots and in the volume database on this server. Selecting an individual robot, displays only the volumes in that robot.

If you select Standalone, the Volumes pane contains information for all the volumes that are in standalone drives (or in standalone status) and in the volume database on this server.



Volumes Pane

This pane lists the volumes in the volume database. The following tables describe the columns in the various volume lists that can be displayed.

Managing the Volumes Pane

The **Edit** menu has commands for finding items and is useful if you are managing many volumes. You can use **View > Columns > Layout** to rearrange or hide specific columns in the Volumes pane. Some of the columns are hidden initially by default.

Volume Pools List

If you select **Media > Volume Pools** in the tree pane, the following list is displayed in the Volumes Pane showing information for all of the volume pools.

Volume Pools List

Column	Description
Volume Pool	Name of the volume pool. A volume pool defines the usage for the volume. Volumes in a pool are grouped together for use by a single application and are protected from access by other applications and users. None is the default pool for users of applications, other than NetBackup. NetBackup is the default pool name for NetBackup. DataStore is the default pool name for DataStore.
Number	Number assigned to the volume pool. This number is assigned by NetBackup. The following numbers are reserved: 0 is the None (default) pool. 1 is the NetBackup pool. The DataStore pool is assigned the next available number.
User	Contains the value ANY or the user ID (for example, root(0)).
Host	Name of the host that is allowed to request and use the volumes in this volume pool or the value ANYHOST.
Group	Identifies the UNIX user group for this volume pool or contains NONE.
Description	Description for the volume pool. You create the description when you configure a volume pool.



Volume Groups List

If you select **Media > Volume Groups** in the tree pane, the following list is displayed in the Volumes Pane showing information for all of the volume groups.

Volume Groups List

Column	Description
Volume Group	<p>Name of the volume group. A volume group defines the volume by location and is a logical group of volumes that are at the same physical location.</p> <p>Volume groups are a convenience for administrating multiple volumes. By using a volume group, you can logically move a set of volumes between a robotic library and a standalone location, or delete them by specifying the group name rather than each individual media ID.</p> <p>More than one volume group can share the same location. For example, a robotic library can contain volumes from more than one volume group and there can be more than one standalone volume group. All volumes in a volume group must have a compatible media type.</p>
Media Type	Media Manager media type of the volume group.
Robot Number	Number of the robot that contains this volume group. If the robot type is NONE, this column contains a hyphen (-).
Robot Type	Type of robot that contains this volume group. NONE in this column means a standalone volume group.
Robot Control Host	This is the robot control host for the volumes in this volume group. If the robot type is NONE, this column contains a hyphen (-).
Volume Count	Number of volumes in this volume group.

Robots List

If you select **Media > Robots** in the tree pane, the following list is displayed in the Volumes Pane showing information for all of the robots.

Robots List

Column	Description
Robot Name	Contains the name of the robot (comprised of the robot type and robot number), for example TLM(3).



Robots List (continued)

Column	Description
Device Host	Contains the name of the device host where this robot is defined.
Robot Type	Type of robot. See the Reference Topics appendix of this guide for a list of supported robot types.
Robot Number	Number of the robot.
Volume Database Host	Contains the name of the volume database host for the volumes in this robot.
Serial Number	Contains the robot serial number.
Robotic Path	Contains the path of the robot or is blank for remote robots.
Robot Control Host	Name of the host that is providing the robotic control. This column contains a host name only for robots where the robot control is handled by a different host than the host where the robot is attached. This column is not applicable for NetBackup BusinessServer and is blank.

Volumes List

If you select an item under **Volume Pools**, **Volume Groups**, **Robots**, or **Standalone** in the tree pane, the volumes list is filtered based on the selected item and that information is displayed in the Volumes pane.

Volumes List

Column	Description
Media ID	Identifies the volume in six or less alphanumeric characters. This value is usually assumed to be the same as the external media ID and should be the same as the recorded media ID for non-scratch, labeled media. You specify the media ID when you add volumes to Media Manager.
Barcode	Uniquely identifies the barcode of a volume in 13 alphanumeric characters or less.
Media Type	Media type of the volume. See “Media Manager Media Types” on page 214 for a list of the supported media types.



Volumes List (continued)

Column	Description
Robot Type	Type of robot that contains this volume. See “Media Manager Robot Types” on page 213 for a list of supported robot types. NONE in this column means a standalone volume.
Robot Number	Number of the robot that contains this volume. If the volume is for a standalone drive or the volume is part of a group that was moved out of a robot (with the intent of being moved back into a robot), this column contains a hyphen (-).
Robot Control Host	Name of the host that controls the robot that contains this volume. This host is providing the robotic control. If this column is blank, the volume is for a standalone drive.
Slot	Slot in the robot that contains the volume. This column is blank for RSM robots, since Media Manager does not track slot information for these robots. For RSM robots, the operating system software tracks the slot information.
Volume Group	Name of the volume group for this volume.
Volume Pool	The volume pool defines the usage for the volume. Volumes in a pool are grouped together for use by a single application and are protected from access by other applications and users. None is the default pool name for users of applications, other than NetBackup, DataStore, and Storage Migrator. NetBackup is the default pool name for NetBackup. DataStore is the default pool name for DataStore. HSM is the default pool name for Storage Migrator.
Mounts	Number of times that the volume has been mounted (does not apply to cleaning media types).
Time Assigned	Shows the date when the volume was assigned for use. You cannot delete a volume or change its volume pool while it is assigned to an application.



Volumes List (continued)

Column	Description
Status	<p>Applies only to volumes that are assigned to NetBackup or Storage Migrator for Microsoft Exchange.</p> <p>There is also a date in the Time Assigned column for assigned volumes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 0 - NetBackup The volume is assigned to NetBackup regular backups. - 1 - Catalog The volume is assigned to NetBackup catalog (database) backups. - 3 - Storage Migrator The volume is assigned to Storage Migrator for Microsoft Exchange or Storage Migrator for Windows 2000.
Side/Face	<p>Location of the volume.</p> <p>If the media type is an 8mm tape and the robot type is TL8, this column shows the xy coordinates for the slot number.</p> <p>For any other media type, this column contains a hyphen (-).</p>
Partner	<p>For optical disks, this column shows the media ID of the volume on the other side of the optical platter. For all other media types, the column contains a hyphen (-). You define this value as Partner ID when you add the volume.</p> <p>For NetBackup BusinessServer, this column contains a hyphen (-), since optical media is not supported.</p>
Max Mounts	<p>Number of times the volume can be mounted. If maximum mounts is reached, a message is logged to the system application log and Media Manager allows no further mounts in write mode. Further mounts in read mode are allowed.</p>
First Mount	<p>Date and time that the volume was first mounted through Media Manager.</p>
Last Mount	<p>Date and time that the volume was last mounted.</p>
Expiration Date	<p>Refers to the age of the volume. If the expiration date is reached, the volume is considered too old to be reliable and Media Manager allows no further mounts in write mode. Further mounts in read mode are allowed, but a message is logged to the system application log indicating that the expiration date has been reached. If the column is blank, the volume has no expiration date.</p>
Cleanings Remaining	<p>For a cleaning tape, this column shows how many more times the tape can be used. To use a cleaning tape, the value in this column must be greater than zero. You can change this count by selecting the volume and using Change on the Edit menu.</p>



Volumes List (continued)

Column	Description
Created	Date and time that the volume was added.
Description	Describes the media in 25 or less alphanumeric characters. You create the description when you add volumes.

Status Bar

The status bar appears at the bottom of the NetBackup Console window. The status bar

- ◆ Shows tool tips (if tool tips are enabled).
- ◆ Indicates the name of the master server.
- ◆ Indicates if you are connected to the master server.

To show or hide the status bar

- ❖ Click **View > Status Bar**.

Shortcut Menus and Commands

Clicking the right mouse button while the pointer is over either pane or a selection of a pane, displays a shortcut menu with commands that apply to that context. These commands are also usually available on the menus or toolbars.

Tool Tips

Tool tips are helpful information for the toolbar and menu buttons (as you position the pointer over a button). To enable tool tips

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. Click **View > Customize**.
3. On the **Toolbars** tab, select **Show ToolTips**.



Customizing the Window

The **View** menu has options for sorting and changing the layout and appearance of the panes.

Showing or Hiding Columns

You can use **View > Columns > Layout** to show or hide columns in this display.

Rearranging Columns

You can use **View > Columns > Layout** to rearrange the order of columns in this display.

Allowable Media Manager Characters

The following set of characters can be used in user-defined names, such as volume groups, volume pool names, and media IDs that you enter when creating these entities. These characters must be used even when specifying these items in foreign languages.

Do not use a minus as the first character or leave any spaces between characters.

- ◆ Alphabetic (A-Z a-z)
- ◆ Numeric (0-9)
- ◆ Period (.)
- ◆ Plus (+)
- ◆ Minus (-)
- ◆ Underscore (_)

Administering Media on Other Hosts

Initially, you can manage media on the server where you are running NetBackup. The name of this server and its connection status is shown in the status bar (on the right side) of the window, for example Master Server: spain4.

If you change from a NetBackup DataCenter server to a NetBackup BusinessServer server, the functionality available on the new server is limited to the functionality supported by NetBackup BusinessServer.

If you change from a NetBackup BusinessServer server to a NetBackup DataCenter server, complete functionality is available on the new server.

To change to a different server, use the following procedure:



1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. Click **File > Change Server**.

In the dialog box for **File > Change Server**, do one of the following to specify the host:

- Enter the name of the host.
- Select a host from one of the hosts shown in the list.
- Click **Browse** and select a host.

You can also click **Remove** to delete a host from the list of available hosts.

Click **OK**.

Note You can also click the **arrow** to the right of the Change Server icon and select a host from one of the hosts shown in the list.

3. The name of the new host appears in the status bar and the volumes pane shows the volume information for the new server.

Configuring Volume Pools

A volume pool identifies a logical set of volumes by usage. Associating volumes with a volume pool protects them from access by unauthorized users, groups, or applications.

With the exception of the volume pools automatically created by NetBackup, you must create a volume pool before you can add volumes to a volume pool. The following volume pools are automatically created (see “Volume Pools List” on page 48):

- ◆ Media Manager creates a pool, named NetBackup, for NetBackup use.
- ◆ NetBackup creates a pool, named DataStore, for DataStore use.

During initial configuration, it is easiest to create all of your volume pools first. Then as you add volumes, you can assign them to volume pools.

It is also possible to configure a scratch pool from which Media Manager can transfer volumes, when another volume pool has no volumes available.

For background information, see “Volume Pools” on page 228 and “Scratch Volume Pools” on page 230.

The following topics explain volume pool configuration:

- ◆ Adding a New Volume Pool or Scratch Volume Pool
- ◆ Changing the Attributes of a Volume Pool

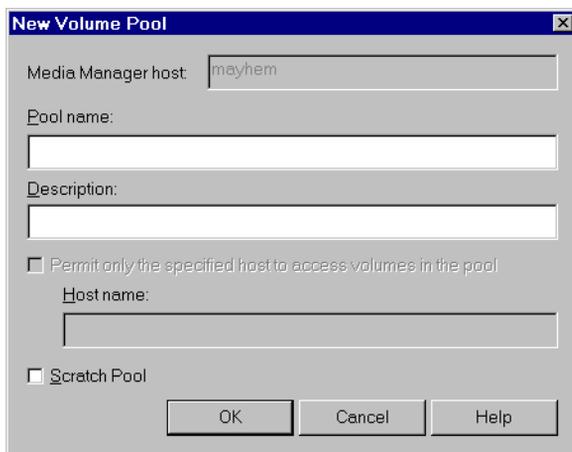


- ◆ Changing the Volume Pool Assignment for a Volume
- ◆ Deleting a Volume Pool

Adding a New Volume Pool or Scratch Volume Pool

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. Click **Actions > New > Volume Pool**.

To add a scratch volume pool, see “Adding a Scratch Volume Pool” on page 56.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "New Volume Pool". It has a close button in the top right corner. The dialog contains the following fields and controls:

- Media Manager host:** A text box containing the value "mayhem".
- Pool name:** An empty text box.
- Description:** An empty text box.
- Permit only the specified host to access volumes in the pool**
- Host name:** An empty text box.
- Scratch Pool**
- Buttons: **OK**, **Cancel**, and **Help**.

3. In the **Pool name** text box, enter a name for the new volume pool.
The name can be 20 characters or less, and cannot contain any spaces or special characters. See “Allowable Media Manager Characters” on page 54.
4. In the **Description** text box, enter a brief description for the pool.

Adding a Scratch Volume Pool

A scratch pool is a special volume pool that you can optionally configure. If a scratch pool is configured, Media Manager moves volumes from the scratch pool to any other pools that do not have volumes available.

If you want this pool to be a scratch volume pool, do the following:

1. Specify attributes for the scratch pool as shown in the following table:

For	Enter
Pool Name	Any name, except NetBackup or None. It is recommended to use <i>scratchpool</i> as the pool name.
Description	It is recommended to use <i>scratch pool</i> in the description.
Scratch Pool	Select this check box.

2. Add volumes to the scratch volume pool for each robotic or standalone device that may require them.

Follow the steps for adding other volumes to pools (see “Adding New Volumes” on page 63). In this case, select the pool name of the scratch pool you created as the volume pool.

Changing the Attributes of a Volume Pool

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. Select the desired pool from the pools shown under **Volume Pools** in the tree pane.
3. Click **Edit > Change**.



4. In the **Description** text box, enter a new description for the pool.

To change this pool to a scratch volume pool, see “Changing a Volume Pool To a Scratch Volume Pool” on page 58.

Changing a Volume Pool To a Scratch Volume Pool

A scratch pool is a special volume pool that you can optionally configure. If a scratch pool is configured, Media Manager moves volumes from the scratch pool to any other pools that do not have volumes available.

If you want to change this pool to be a scratch volume pool:

1. Specify attributes for the scratch pool as follows.

For	Action
Description	It is recommended to enter <i>scratch pool</i> as the description.
Scratch Pool	Select this check box.

2. Add volumes to the scratch volume pool for each robotic or standalone device that may require them.

Follow the steps for adding other volumes to pools (see “Adding New Volumes” on page 63). In this case, select the name of the scratch pool as the volume pool.

Changing the Volume Pool Assignment for a Volume

Volumes are grouped in a specific volume pool. The Volume Pool column in the Volumes list shows the name of the volume pool to which the volumes belong. Change the volume pool assignment as follows:

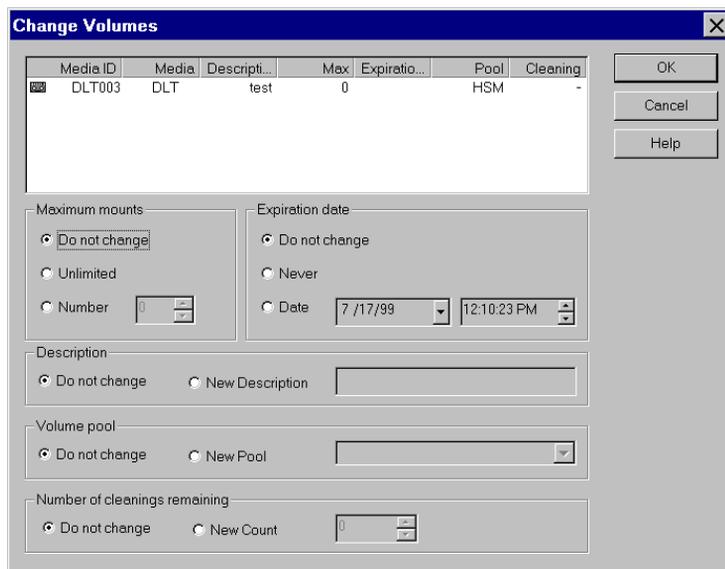
1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. Select a volume or volumes from the volumes pane.

Note You are unable to change the volume pool for any assigned volumes until the application deassigns them (see “Deassigning Volumes” on page 82).

3. Click **Edit > Change**.



In the dialog box that appears, the volumes you selected are listed in the top section of the dialog.



4. In the Volume Pool section, click **New Pool** and click the **arrow** to view a list of the available volume pools.

Select a volume pool from the list.

5. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Volume Pool

Note that you *cannot* delete any of the following pools:

- ◆ A volume pool that contains volumes
- ◆ Scratch pools
- ◆ The NetBackup volume pool
- ◆ The None volume pool
- ◆ The HSM volume pool (for VSM)
- ◆ The DataStore volume pool

Delete a volume pool as follows:



1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. Choose the volume pool and ensure that the volume pool is empty.
If necessary, change the volume pool name for any volumes in the pool. Or if the volumes are not needed, delete them.
3. Click **Edit > Delete**.

Methods Available for Injecting and Ejecting Volumes

Some robotic libraries implement different functionality for their media access ports. For example, some libraries have front-panel inject and eject features that conflict with the use of the media access port in NetBackup. Other robotic libraries require front-panel interaction when using the media access port.

Read the operator manual for your robotic library to understand the media access port functionality. Libraries such as the ones noted may not be fully compatible with the inject and eject features of NetBackup if not properly handled. Other libraries may not be compatible at all.

Methods for Injecting Volumes into a Robot

The following methods are available to inject a single volume into a robotic library.

When Adding New Volumes

When specifying dialog box entries for adding new volumes, select **Inject volume into robot via the media access port** to inject a volume into a robotic library.

Inject volume into robot via the media access port is available only for the robot types listed in the matrix shown in “Inject and Eject Functions Available by Robot Type” on page 63.

Inject volume into robot via the media access port *may* be enabled for some robots that do not have media access ports, since the robot type for the robotic library only indicates that media access ports are possible.

See “Adding Volumes - Using the Actions Menu” on page 66 for complete instructions.



When Moving Volumes

When specifying dialog box entries for moving volumes, select **Inject volume into robot via the media access port** to inject this volume into a robotic library.

Inject volume into robot via the media access port is available only if the following are true:

- ◆ You are moving a single volume from standalone to a robotic library.
- ◆ Media Manager supports inject for the robot type involved (see “Inject and Eject Functions Available by Robot Type” on page 63).

Inject volume into robot via the media access port *may* be enabled for some robots that do not have media access ports, since the robot type for the robot only indicates that media access ports are possible.

See “Moving Volumes” on page 73 for complete instructions.

When Performing a Volume Configuration Update Using Robot Inventory

When performing a volume configuration update for a robot, select **Empty media access port prior to update** to inject a volume into a robot.

Any volumes to be injected must be in the media access port before the operation begins. If **Empty media access port prior to update** is selected and there are no volumes in the port, you are *not* prompted to place volumes in the media access port and the update operation continues.

Each volume located in the media access port is moved into the robotic library. If the robotic library has a port that can hold multiple volumes, volumes are moved to empty slots in the robotic library until the media access port is empty or all the slots are full.

After the volume or volumes have been moved, the configuration update proceeds as usual.

Empty media access port prior to update is available only for the robot types listed in the matrix shown in “Inject and Eject Functions Available by Robot Type” on page 63.

Empty media access port prior to update *may* be available for some robots that do not have media access ports, since these robot types only indicate that media access ports are possible.

See “Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 97 for complete instructions.



Methods for Ejecting Volumes From a Robot

The following methods are available to eject single or multiple volumes.

When Moving Volumes

When specifying dialog box entries for moving volumes, select **Eject volume from robot via the media access port** to eject one or more selected volumes using the robot's media access port.

You can eject volumes that reside in multiple robots. In this case, multiple eject dialogs will appear for each robot type.

Eject volume from robot via the media access port is available only if the following are true:

- ◆ You are moving a volume from a robotic library to standalone.
- ◆ Media Manager supports eject for the robot type involved (see “Inject and Eject Functions Available by Robot Type” on page 63).

Eject volume from robot via the media access port *may* be enabled for some robots that do not have media access ports, since the robot type for the robotic library only indicates that media access ports are possible.

For the robot types shown in the 4th column of the matrix, selecting multiple volumes to eject requires operator intervention. The selected volumes will be ejected one volume at a time. Operator intervention is required to remove the ejected volume and answer the prompts.

For the robot types shown in the 3rd column of the matrix, operator intervention is only required if the robotic library does not have a media access port large enough to eject all of the selected volumes. For these robot types, you are prompted to remove the media from the media access port so the eject can continue with the remaining volumes.

See “Moving Volumes” on page 73 for complete instructions.

Using the Eject Volumes From Robot Command

Select **Actions > Eject Volume(s) From Robot** to eject one or more selected volumes from a robotic library.

Eject Volume(s) From Robot is only available for the robot types shown in the matrix in “Inject and Eject Functions Available by Robot Type” on page 63.

You can eject volumes that reside in multiple robots. In this case, multiple eject dialogs will appear for each robot type.

For the robot types shown in the 4th column of the matrix, selecting multiple volumes to eject requires operator action. The selected volumes will be ejected one volume at a time. Operator intervention is required to remove the ejected volume and answer the prompts.

For the robot types shown in the 3rd column of the matrix, operator intervention is only required if the robotic library does not have a media access port large enough to eject all of the selected volumes. For these robot types, you are prompted to remove the media from the media access port so the eject can continue with the remaining volumes.

See “Ejecting Volumes From Robots (Actions Menu Command)” on page 79 for complete instructions.

Inject and Eject Functions Available by Robot Type

The following matrix shows the availability of inject and eject functions provided with the Media Manager functions listed in the 1st column. The availability of the inject and eject functions listed in the column headings depends on the robot type being used. NA in a cell means *not applicable*.

Inject / Eject Functions Available by Robot Type

Media Manager Function	Inject Single Volume	Eject Single or Multiple Volumes (Dialog Type 1)	Eject Single or Multiple Volumes (Dialog Type 2)
New Volumes	TL8, TLD	NA	NA
Move Volumes	TL8, TLD	TL8, TLD	RSM
Robot Inventory	TL8, TLD	NA	NA
Eject Volumes	NA	TL8, TLD	RSM

Adding New Volumes

Media Manager volumes are logical units of data storage or cleaning capability on media that have been assigned media IDs and other attributes, which are recorded in the Media Manager volume database. The attributes in the volume database include information to show the robotic location, and includes the robot host, robot type, robot number, and slot location. This type of information for the volume is referred to as *residence information* or *residence*.

When you add a new volume, there is no default expiration date.



Methods Available for Adding Volumes

The methods available to add volumes depend on how the volume will be used, as follows.

If your devices are supported by the Volume Configuration wizard, using this wizard is an easy method for adding volumes. See “Using the Volume Configuration Wizard” on page 72 for more details.

Robotic Volumes (Volumes Located in a Robot)

- ◆ The easiest way to add robotic volumes is to use the Volume Configuration wizard. See “Using the Volume Configuration Wizard” on page 72 for more details.
- ◆ To use robot inventory to add robotic volumes, perform the Update Volume Configuration procedure. During the update, Media Manager assigns the media IDs and other attributes.
See “Adding Volumes - Using the Robot Inventory Update Option” on page 66.
- ◆ To add volumes using the menu, see “Adding Volumes - Using the Actions Menu” on page 66.

Standalone Volumes (Volumes To Be Used in Standalone Drives)

- ◆ The easiest way to add standalone volumes is to use the Volume Configuration wizard. See “Using the Volume Configuration Wizard” on page 72 for more details.
- ◆ You can also configure volumes automatically by inserting the media into a standalone drive. For an unused volume, NetBackup assigns a media ID, labels the volume, and uses it (if it needs a volume of that type for a backup). Media Manager adds the media ID (designated by NetBackup) and other attributes for the volume.

The `DISABLE_STANDALONE_DRIVE_EXTENSIONS` NetBackup configuration option turns off NetBackup’s automatic use of standalone volumes. See the NetBackup system administrator’s guide for Windows servers for more information.
- ◆ To manually choose the media IDs, label the volume with the NetBackup `bp1label` command and follow the instructions in “Adding Volumes - Using the Actions Menu” on page 66. See the NetBackup system administrator’s guide for Windows servers for more information on this command.

Even if you normally use NetBackup’s assignment capabilities for standalone volumes, manually adding extra standalone volumes prevents "out of media" errors in some situations.

For example, if a volume in a standalone drive is full or unusable because of errors, NetBackup requests that Media Manager eject the volume. NetBackup then searches for another unused volume. If another appropriate volume is not defined, NetBackup exits with an error.

Labeling a volume (using the NetBackup `bplabel` command) and adding it prevents this problem, because Media Manager displays a mount request for that volume rather than returning an error to NetBackup.

NetBackup Catalog Backup Volumes

- ◆ Prior to using volumes for NetBackup catalog backups, you must add them. You can also use the NetBackup `bplabel` command to label the volume.

See “Adding Volumes - Using the Actions Menu” on page 66.

Notes on Labeling NetBackup Volumes

Labeling volumes is controlled by the application. For more information, refer to the NetBackup BusinessServer system administrator’s guide for Windows servers.

NetBackup controls the labeling of its volumes and in most cases performs this operation automatically.

- ◆ If a volume in a robotic library has not been labeled, NetBackup labels it with the media ID assigned by Media Manager the first time that it uses the volumes for a backup. This is done unless those volumes
 - Were last used for NetBackup catalog backups. You do not want to label the volumes unless they are no longer being used for catalog backups.
 - Contain data from a recognized non-NetBackup application. The NetBackup configuration option, `ALLOW_MEDIA_OVERWRITE` can be set to allow the volume to be overwritten.
- ◆ If you prefer to assign specific media IDs to NetBackup volumes, label them with the NetBackup `bplabel` command and add them using the manual update procedure.
- ◆ NetBackup uses a default prefix of A when assigning media IDs (for example, A00001). To change this default, use the NetBackup `MEDIA_ID_PREFIX` configuration option.
- ◆ If the robotic library supports barcodes, by default NetBackup generates media IDs for new volumes based on the last six characters of the barcode. To change this default, you can specify and select specific characters using Media ID generation rules (see “Configuring Media ID Generation Rules” on page 128).



Adding Volumes - Using the Robot Inventory Update Option

To update the volume database to match the contents of the robotic library, use the following procedure:

1. Insert the volume into the robotic library.
2. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media > Robots**.
3. Select the robotic library where you inserted the volume.
4. Click **Actions > Inventory Robot**.
5. In the Inventory Type section, select **Update Volume Configuration**.

The update includes the generation of media IDs for new volumes as follows.

If the robot

- ◆ Supports barcodes and the volumes have readable barcode labels, the update part of the operation generates media IDs for new volumes based on the last six characters of the barcodes as the default or the specific characters that you specify if you are using Media ID generation rules.
- ◆ Does not support barcodes or the volumes do not have readable barcodes, the new media IDs are based on a media ID prefix that you specify.

See “Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 97 for more information on robot inventory and media ID generation rules.

When you use barcode rules, new volumes that are added through a barcode rule are assigned a media type, volume pool, maximum number of mounts (or maximum cleanings), and description.

Adding Volumes - Using the Actions Menu

1. If you are adding new volumes to a robotic library, insert them into the proper slots.
2. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
3. Click **Actions > New > Volumes**.



- Specify the properties for the volumes as explained in “Dialog Box Entries for New Volumes” on page 68.

Caution Be careful when specifying properties, since you cannot later change properties such as the media ID or media type. To change these properties you need to delete the volumes and add them again.

- Click **OK** to execute the add. If you selected **Inject volume into robot via the media access port**, an inject prompt appears.

The volumes pane now shows the new volume information. If the robot has a barcode reader, Media Manager does the following:

- Adds an entry in the volume database, using the specified media ID.
- Reads the barcode of each new volume.
- Adds the barcodes as attributes in the volume database.

Note If you are making multiple additions, clicking **Apply** updates the configuration without closing the dialog box or refreshing the display. This allows you to add another volume by modifying the dialog box contents and then clicking **Apply** or **OK**.



Dialog Box Entries for New Volumes

Media Type

Specifies the media type for the volume that you are going to add. Click the **arrow** to open a list of the available media types and select from the list.

If you are adding a cleaning tape, choose one of the cleaning tape media types.

Robot

Specifies the robotic library to which you are adding the volumes.

Select from the list as follows:

- ◆ Select the robot in the list to add the volumes to that robot.
- ◆ Select **Standalone** to designate the volumes as not currently associated with a robotic library (such as those cases when using a standalone drive).

To add volumes to a robot that does not appear in the list (for example, a new robot), click **Find Robots**.

Find Robots

Displays a dialog box where you can select the robot. Select **Find Robots** if the desired robot does not appear in the **Robot** box.

After clicking **OK**, the name of the selected robot appears in the **Robot** box, and is also the robot name that will be in the volume database, for the volumes you are moving.

Note For NetBackup BusinessServer, you are restricted to one robot configured on a server.

Number of Volumes

Specify the number of volumes. For a robotic library, this refers to the number of slots that must be reserved for the new volumes. Depending on the number of volumes you are adding, you must also specify additional information as shown in the following table:

If you are adding	You must also specify
One volume	Media ID.

If you are adding	You must also specify
More than one volume	First Media ID and Media ID naming style .

Media ID Naming Style

If you are adding more than one volume, click the **arrow** in the **Media ID Naming Style** box to open a list of possible combinations of alphanumeric characters and digits. Then select a style to use in creating the media IDs for this range of new volumes.

Media IDs for an RSM robot must always match the barcodes. This means that you must get a list of the barcodes prior to adding the volumes. You can obtain this information through a robotic inventory or from the robot vendor's software. For RSM robots, Media Manager supports barcodes with six or less characters.

Media ID or First Media ID

In the text box, enter a 1 to 6-character ID for the new volume.

If you are adding one volume, **Media ID** is the ID for the volume.

If you are adding more than one volume, **First Media ID** is the ID for the first volume in the range of volumes. Use the same pattern that you chose in the **Media ID Naming Style** box. Media Manager names the remaining volumes by incrementing the digits.

Media IDs for an RSM robot must always match the barcodes. This means that you must get a list of the barcodes prior to adding the volumes. You can obtain this information through a robotic inventory or from the robot vendor's software. For RSM robots, Media Manager supports barcodes with six or less characters.

Description

Enter a 1 to 25 ASCII character description of the media that you are adding.

First Slot Number

Note You cannot enter slot information for volumes in a RSM robot. Windows 2000 tracks the slot locations for RSM robot types.

For volumes in a robot, specify the first slot number to be used by the range of volumes that you are adding. Media Manager assigns the remainder of the slot numbers sequentially.



The appendix “Robot Drive and Slot Layouts” on page 251 shows the slot layout for many of the robots that Media Manager supports.

Maximum Mounts

For volumes intended for backups, specify the maximum number of times that Media Manager is able to mount the volumes. When a volume reaches this mount limit, the volume can be read, but not written.

To help determine the maximum mount limit to use, consult your vendor documentation for information on the expected life of the volume.

Note Specify the number 0 to permit an unlimited number of mounts.

Maximum Cleanings

For a cleaning tape, specify the number of cleanings that can be performed. The number must be greater than zero.

See “Drive Cleaning” on page 225 for information on manual cleaning and cleaning tapes.

Volume Group

Enter the name of the volume group for the volumes you are adding, or click the **arrow** to select from a list of previously configured volume groups. The following table shows the results if you leave the volume group blank:

If you leave the Volume group blank for

If you leave the Volume group blank for	Media Manager
Standalone volumes	Does not assign a volume group.
Robotic volumes	Generates a name using the robot number and type. For example, if the robot is a TS8 and has a robot number of 50, the group name will be 00_050_TS8.

Note Do not confuse volume groups with volume pools. Refer to “Volume Pools and Volume Groups” on page 227 for an explanation of the differences.

Rules for Assigning Volume Groups

- ◆ All volumes in a group must be the same media type.



However, a media type and its corresponding cleaning media type are allowed in the same volume group (for example, DLT and DLT_CLN).

- ◆ All volumes in a robotic library *must* belong to a volume group. You cannot add volumes to a robotic library without specifying a group or having Media Manager generate a name.
- ◆ The only way to clear a volume group name is to move the volume to standalone and not specify a volume group.
- ◆ More than one volume group can share the same location. For example, a robotic library can contain volumes from more than one volume group and you can have more than one standalone volume group.
- ◆ All members of a group must be in the same robotic library or be standalone.

Volume Pool

Click the **arrow** and select from the list of volume pools as follows.

Select	To Make
None	The volume available to any user or application (cleaning tapes must be in the None pool).
NetBackup	The volume available only to NetBackup.
DataStore	The volume available only to DataStore.
One of the other volume pools in the list	The volume available to a specific volume pool. Other volume pools appear only if you created them earlier as explained in “Configuring Volume Pools” on page 55.

Inject Volume Into Robot via the Media Access Port

Select **Inject volume into robot via the media access port** to insert a single volume into the media access port, so it can be injected into the correct slot in the robot. When you select **Inject volume into robot via the media access port**, insert the volume in the robotic library and Media Manager will add it to its volume configuration.

See “Methods for Injecting Volumes into a Robot” on page 60 for a list of the robot types that determine when **Inject volume into robot via the media access port** is available and more information on using this function.



Using the Volume Configuration Wizard

Use the Volume Configuration wizard to do the following:

- ◆ Inventory your robots.
- ◆ Identify cleaning media in your robots.
- ◆ Add volumes for standalone drives.
- ◆ Update the Media Manager volume database.

After running this wizard to configure media, each media will have a unique media ID in the volume database that is used in NetBackup and Media Manager to track the media.

Wizard Limitations

The Volume Configuration wizard is only available in NetBackup releases 3.4 or later.

This wizard configures volumes for all standalone drives and robots that are supported in NetBackup BusinessServer.

To configure volumes for unsupported devices or RSM robots on Windows 2000 device hosts, see “Adding Volumes - Using the Robot Inventory Update Option” on page 66 or “Adding Volumes - Using the Actions Menu” on page 66.

What To Expect In This Wizard

The following table shows the screens of the wizard and what to expect in each:

Wizard Screen	What to Expect
Welcome	With this wizard you can <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Inventory the volumes in a robotic library.- Create new volumes for use in standalone drives.
Select Device	You select one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- The robot that you want to inventory.- The type of standalone drive where you want to configure volumes. Robots that have more than one type of drive are not supported. In some cases the wizard is unable to determine if more than one type of drive exists in the robot. In this case, you must specify whether or not the robot has multiple drive types.



Wizard Screen	What to Expect
Robot Inventory (<i>Only if a robot was selected</i>)	You start the inventory which updates the Media Manager volume database.
Robot Inventory (<i>Only if a robot was selected</i>)	You can view the results of the inventory.
Identify Cleaning Media (<i>Only if a robot was selected</i>)	To avoid any potential problems in the Media Manager volume database, you select the slots in the robotic library that are known to contain cleaning media.
Volumes for Standalone Drives (<i>Only if a standalone drive was selected</i>)	You specify the number of volumes to configure for the selected drive type. The Media Manager volume database is updated when you click Next .
Completion	You can choose to go back and configure more volumes if necessary, or exit the wizard.

Before You Start This Wizard

Make sure that you have all media that you want to use in the robotic library before starting the wizard.

To Start This Wizard

This wizard is available from the list of wizards displayed in the right pane of the **Media and Device Management** window of the NetBackup Administration Console.

Click **Media and Device Management > Configure Volumes**.

Moving Volumes

When you move volumes in or out of a robotic library, you must physically *and* logically move the volume.

For important background information, see “Moving Volumes” on page 232.

You can move volumes using one of the following methods:

- ◆ Moving Volumes - Using the Robot Inventory Update Option
- ◆ Moving Volumes - Using the Actions Menu



Moving Volumes - Using the Robot Inventory Update Option

The robot must have a barcode reader and the volumes must have readable barcodes to use the following procedure. But you can also use this procedure to just move volumes *out* of a robot, even if the volumes do not have barcodes or if the robot does not have a reader.

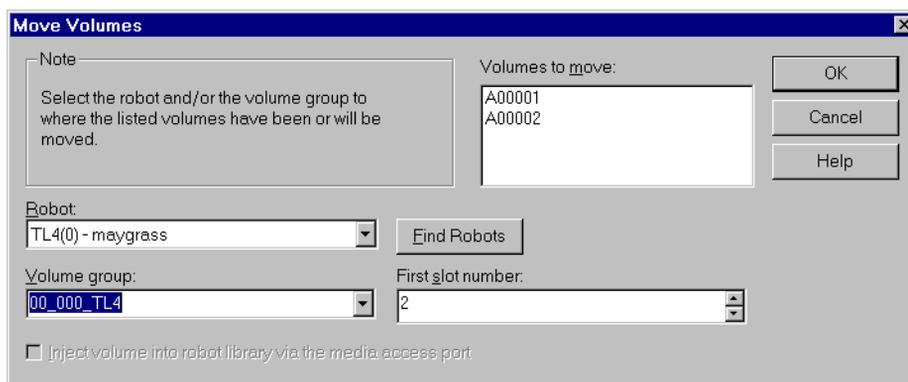
1. Physically move the volumes to their new location.
2. Click **Actions > Inventory Robot** to update the volume database to agree with the contents of the robot.

See “Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 97 for more information.

Moving Volumes - Using the Actions Menu

If you move a volume to a robotic library that has a barcode reader, Media Manager updates the media database to show the correct barcode for the volume.

1. Physically move the volumes to their new location.
You can also use the inject and eject options when moving volumes to or from a robotic library that has a media access port. Inject can be used for single volumes and eject can be used for multiple volumes.
2. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
3. In the volumes pane, select the volumes you want to move.
4. Click **Actions > Move**.



If you selected volumes of different media types or volume residences, a Move Volumes dialog appears for each residence and media type.

For example, if you selected two volumes to move out of a robotic library and two standalone volumes to move in as replacements for these volumes, a dialog box appears for the two full volumes and another dialog box for the two replacement volumes. In this example, you must complete both move dialog boxes to execute the move (complete the move for the volumes that are full first).

Note These multiple Move Volumes dialog boxes may appear on top of each other and need to be repositioned.

The following is an example of a move involving multiple types or residences:

Step 1. Move volumes to Standalone

The screenshot shows the 'Move Volumes' dialog box. It has a title bar with a close button. Inside, there's a 'Note' box with text: 'Select the robot and/or the volume group to where the listed volumes have been or will be moved.' To the right is a list box titled 'Volumes to move:' containing 'A00001' and 'A00002'. Below the list are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons. Further down, there's a 'Robot' dropdown menu set to 'Standalone' and an 'Find Robots' button. Below that is a 'Volume group:' dropdown set to '-' and a 'First slot number:' dropdown set to '2'. At the bottom, there's a checkbox labeled 'Inject volume into robot library via the media access port' which is unchecked.

Step 2. Move volumes to the robot

The screenshot shows the 'Move Volumes' dialog box. It has a title bar with a close button. Inside, there's a 'Note' box with text: 'Select the robot and/or the volume group to where the listed volumes have been or will be moved.' To the right is a list box titled 'Volumes to move:' containing 'A00004' and 'A00005'. Below the list are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons. Further down, there's a 'Robot' dropdown menu set to 'TL4(0) - maygrass' and an 'Find Robots' button. Below that is a 'Volume group:' dropdown set to '00_000_TL4' and a 'First slot number:' dropdown set to '5'. At the bottom, there's a checkbox labeled 'Inject volume into robot library via the media access port' which is unchecked.

5. Specify the properties for the move as explained in “Dialog Box Entries for Move Volumes” on page 76.
6. Click **OK** to execute the move.



If you selected **Eject volume from robot via the media access port**, an eject dialog appears. See “Ejecting Volumes From Robots (Actions Menu Command)” on page 79 for more information on the eject dialogs.

Dialog Box Entries for Move Volumes

Volumes to Move

Shows the Media IDs of the volumes that you selected to move.

Robot

Click the **arrow** to specify the robot where you are moving the volumes.

Select from the list as follows.

Select	If You Are Moving
--------	-------------------

Standalone	Volumes to standalone.
-------------------	------------------------

The robot in the list	Volumes to that robot.
-----------------------	------------------------

	The list shows the robot type and number.
--	---

To move volumes to a robotic library that does not appear in the list (for example, a new robotic library), click **Find Robots**.

Find Robots

Displays a dialog box where you can select the robotic library. Use **Find Robots** if a robotic library does not appear in the Robot box.

The name of the selected robotic library appears in the Robot box, and is also the robotic library name that will be in the volume database, for the volumes you are moving.

Note For NetBackup BusinessServer, you are restricted to one robotic library configured on a server.

Volume Group

Enter the name of the volume group for the volumes that you are moving, or click the **arrow** to select from a list of previously configured volume groups. The following table shows the results if you leave the volume group blank:

If you leave Volume group blank for	Media Manager
Standalone volumes	Does not assign a volume group.
Robotic volumes	Generates a name by using the robot number and type. For example, if the robot is a TS8 and has a robot number of 50, the group name will be 00_050_TS8.

Rules for Moving Volumes Between Groups

- ◆ You must move volumes to a new volume group or to an existing volume group that has the same type of volumes as you are moving.
- ◆ All volumes in a robotic library *must* belong to a volume group. You cannot move volumes into a robotic library without specifying a group or having Media Manager generate a name.
- ◆ More than one volume group can share the same location. For example, a robotic library can contain volumes from more than one volume group and you can have more than one standalone volume group.
- ◆ All members of a group must be in the same robotic library or be standalone.

First Slot Number

Note You cannot enter slot information for volumes in a RSM robot. Windows 2000 tracks the slot locations for RSM robot types.

For volumes in a robotic library, specify the first slot number to be used in the destination robotic library.

By default, this box shows the slot number that the volume is coming from. Media Manager assigns the remainder of the slot numbers sequentially.

The appendix, “Robot Drive and Slot Layouts” on page 251 shows the slot layout for many of the robots that Media Manager supports.



Eject Volume From Robot via the Media Access Port

Select **Eject volume from robot via the media access port** to eject one or more selected volumes using the robot's media access port.

See “Methods for Ejecting Volumes From a Robot” on page 62 for a list of the robot types and cases that determine when **Eject volume from robot via the media access port** is available and more information on using this function.

Inject Volume Into Robot via the Media Access Port

Select **Inject volume into robot via the media access port** to insert a single selected volume in the robot's media access port. The robotic library will then move the volume to the correct slot.

See “Methods for Injecting Volumes into a Robot” on page 60 for a list of the robot types and cases that determine when **Inject volume into robot via the media access port** is available and more information on using this function.

When to Delete Volumes

There may be times when you want to delete volumes. For example, if any of the following situations apply. The volume is

- ◆ No longer used and you want to recycle it by relabeling it with a different media ID.
- ◆ Unusable because of repeated media errors.
- ◆ Past its expiration date or has too many mounts, and you want to replace it with a new volume.
- ◆ Lost and you want to clean up the volume database.

Once a volume is deleted, you can discard it or add it back under the same or a different media ID.

See “Deassigning Volumes” on page 82.

Before deleting and reusing or discarding a volume, ensure that it does not have any important data. NetBackup volumes have an extra safeguard against accidental deletion. Volumes assigned to NetBackup cannot be deleted while they are still assigned. See “Deassigning Volumes” on page 82.



Deleting Volumes

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. In the volumes pane, select the volumes that you want to delete.

Note You cannot delete any assigned volumes until any application using them deassigns them (see “Deassigning Volumes” on page 82).

3. Click **Edit > Delete**.
A dialog box appears asking you to confirm the action.
4. Remove the deleted volumes from the storage device.

Deleting a Volume Group

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. In the volumes list, look at the Time Assigned column to check if any of the volumes in the group you want to delete are currently assigned.
If any of the volumes are assigned, you cannot delete the group until these volumes are deassigned by the application (see “Deassigning Volumes” on page 82). Use the “Deleting Volumes” procedure to delete individual volumes that are unassigned.
3. Select a volume group in the tree pane.
4. Click **Edit > Delete**.
A dialog box appears asking you to confirm the deletion.
5. Remove the deleted volumes from the storage device.

Ejecting Volumes From Robots (Actions Menu Command)

You can eject single or multiple volumes. See “Methods for Ejecting Volumes From a Robot” on page 62 for a list of robot types that determine when this command is available and more information on using this command.

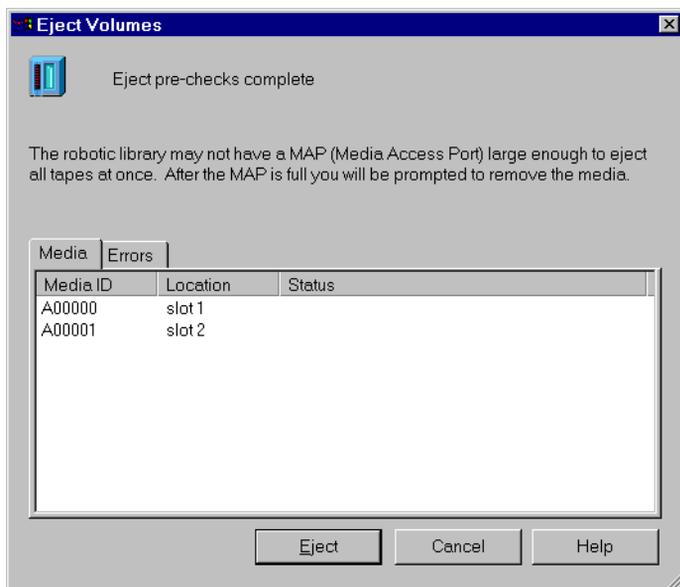
To eject volumes, use the following procedure:



1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. In the volumes pane, select one or more volumes that you want to eject.
3. Click **Actions > Eject Volume(s) From Robot**.

Eject Volumes Dialog Type 1

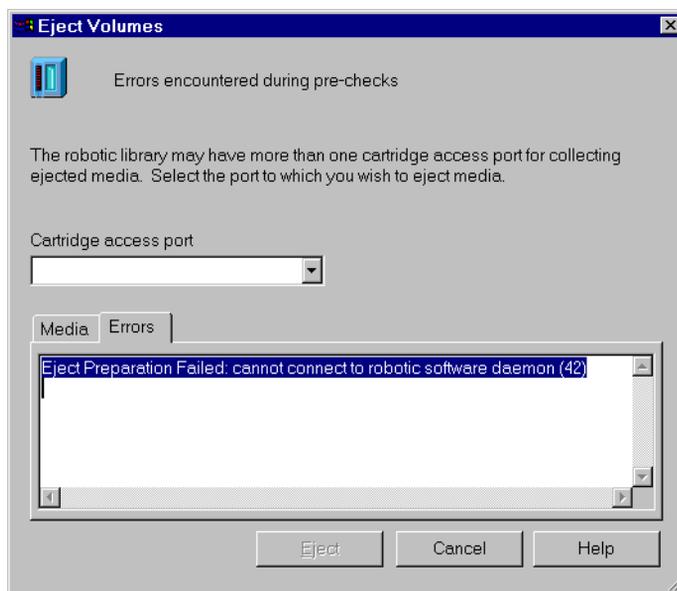
For some robot types, the following dialog is displayed showing the volumes you selected. See “Inject and Eject Functions Available by Robot Type” on page 63 for an explanation of the robot types where this dialog type applies.



1. In normal cases, the **Media** tab shows the volumes that you selected to eject and the **Errors** tab is empty.

The eject may not be possible because of an error. If an error occurs, the **Errors** tab is opened. The following two classes of errors can occur:

- For more serious errors, **Eject** will not be available and the error situation must be corrected (see the sample dialog that follows).
- For other errors, the **Errors** tab shows an explanation of the error. You may continue the eject action (select **Eject**) or cancel (select **Cancel**) depending on the type of error.



2. Click **Eject** to execute the eject.

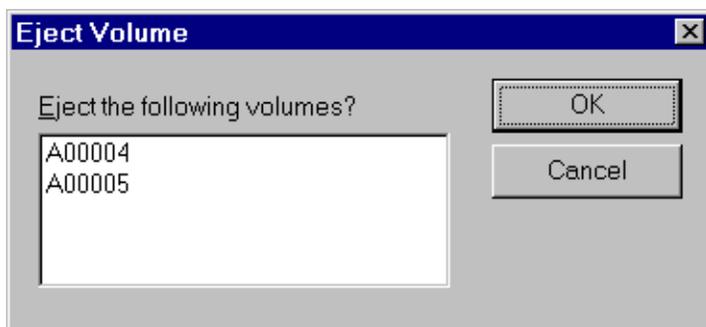
The robotic library may not have a media access port large enough to eject all of the selected volumes. For most robot types, you are prompted to remove the media from the media access port so the eject can continue with the remaining volumes.

Eject Volumes Dialog Type 2

For some robot types, the following dialog is displayed showing the volumes you selected. See “Inject and Eject Functions Available by Robot Type” on page 63 for an explanation of the robot types where this dialog type applies.

If you selected multiple volumes, operator action is required to remove each volume after each eject (prompt dialogs are used). Click **OK** to execute the eject.





Deassigning Volumes

An assigned volume is currently assigned for exclusive use by NetBackup. A volume is set to the assigned state when NetBackup first starts using it to store data. The time of the assignment appears in the Time Assigned column for the volume in the volumes pane. When a volume is assigned, you cannot delete it or change its volume pool.

A volume remains assigned until NetBackup deassigns it. NetBackup deassigns a volume only when it no longer needs the data.

In the case of a NetBackup volume:

- ◆ A regular backup volume is deassigned when the retention period has expired for all the backups on the volume.
- ◆ A catalog backup volume is deassigned when you stop using it for catalog backups.

Determining Which Application is Using a Volume

To determine which application is using the volume, look at the Status column of the Volumes list (see “Volumes Pane” on page 48).

Deassigning NetBackup Volumes

Caution It is recommended that you *do not* manually deassign NetBackup volumes. If you do, be certain that the volumes do not have any important data. If you are uncertain, duplicate the images to another volume.

The procedure is different depending on whether the volume is currently being used for regular backups or for backing up the NetBackup catalogs. See the following two topics for instructions.

Deassigning NetBackup Regular Backup Volumes

NetBackup deassigns a regular backup volume when the retention periods have expired for all backups on the volume. If you do not need the data and do not want to wait for normal expiration to occur, you can expire the backup by using the `bpexpdate` command on the master server.

This command is located in the `install_path\NetBackup\bin\admincmd` directory and has the following format. `install_path` is the directory where NetBackup is installed.

```
bpexpdate -d 0 -m media id
```

Where:

media id is the media ID to be expired.

The following example assumes there is only one NetBackup server and expires all the backups on media ID ABC001:

```
install_path\NetBackup\bin\admincmd\bpexpdate -d 0 -m ABC001
```

If you use this command to expire the volume, NetBackup stops tracking the backups that are on it and deassigns it. This makes the volume available to be reused, deleted, or its volume pool to be changed. You can manually expire the backups regardless of the volume's prior state (frozen, suspended, and so on).

Expiring the volume does not change anything on the volume itself. When a media is expired, however, you must use the NetBackup import feature before restoring the backups it contains (a restore is possible only if the volume has not been overwritten).

Deassigning NetBackup Catalog Backup Volumes

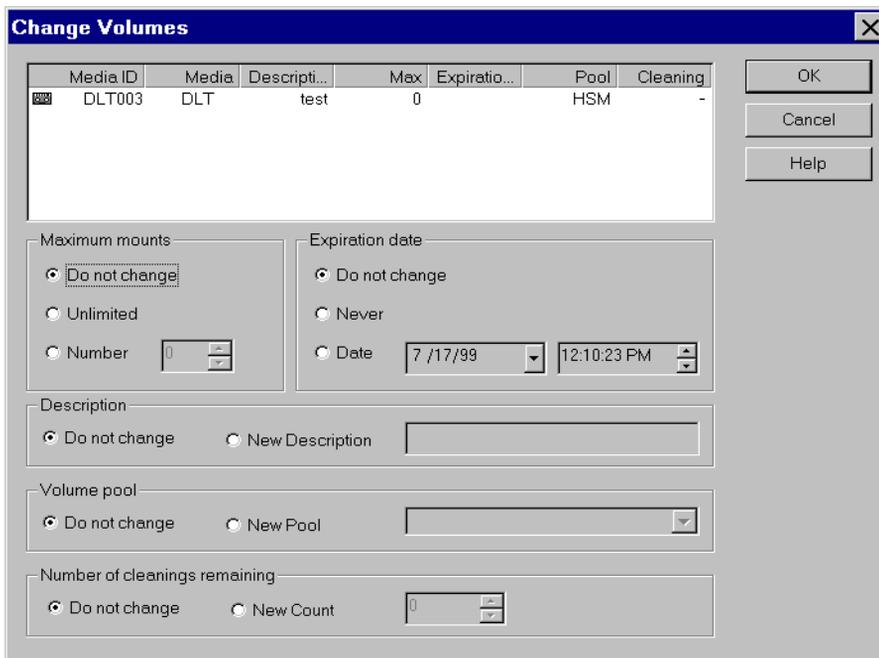
Volumes used for backing up the NetBackup catalogs are tracked separately from regular backup volumes. To deassign these volumes (assuming they do not contain any important data), specify `None` or a different media ID for catalog backups (see the NetBackup system administrator's guide for Windows). Then the media is available to be reassigned or deleted; or its volume pool can be changed.

Changing the Attributes for a Volume

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. In the volumes pane, select a volume or volumes.
3. Click **Edit > Change**.



A dialog box appears and shows the media ID and other attributes for each selected volume.



4. In the dialog box, change the attributes as explained in “Dialog Box Entries for Change Volumes” on page 84.
5. Click OK to apply the changes to the selected volumes.

Dialog Box Entries for Change Volumes

Maximum Mounts

Note Does not apply to cleaning tapes.

Controls the number of times that the selected volumes can be mounted. The choices for this entry are as follows.

Select	Result
Do Not Change	No changes will be made to Maximum Mounts.
Unlimited	Allows an unlimited number of mounts. Unlimited is the default.
Number	Sets a specific limit for the number of mounts. When the limit is passed the volume can still be read, but it will not be mounted for a write. Entering 0 (the default) is the same as selecting Unlimited .

To help determine the maximum mount limit to use, consult your vendor documentation for information on the expected life of the volume.

Expiration Date

Note Expiration date does not apply to cleaning tapes. When you add a new volume, there is no default expiration date.

Changes the expiration date for the selected volumes. This date refers to the age of the volume and is the time at which the volume is considered too old to be reliable. When the expiration date has passed, a volume can still be read but will not be mounted for a write.

Do not confuse the expiration date with the retention period for the backup data on the volume. The expiration date that you can set in this dialog box refers only to the physical expiration of the volume and is independent of the backup data written on the volume.

The backup data expiration date is separately managed by the application that is using the volume. In the case of NetBackup, the expiration date for the data is set as the retention level during schedule configuration. The choices for this entry are as follows.

Select	Result
Do Not Change	No changes will be made to Expiration Date.
Never	Sets the expiration date to infinity.
Number	Sets a specific date and time when you want Media Manager to stop using the volumes.



Description

Specifies the media description for the selected volumes. The choices for this entry are as follows.

Select	Result
Do Not Change	No changes will be made to the media description.
New Description	Allows you to enter a short description of how the volumes are being used.

Volume Pool

Note Does not apply to cleaning tapes.

Specifies the desired volume pool. The choices for this entry are as follows.

Select	Result
Do Not Change	No changes will be made to Volume Pool.
New Pool	Specify a volume pool. Click the arrow for a list of all previously configured volume pools.

Number of Cleanings Remaining

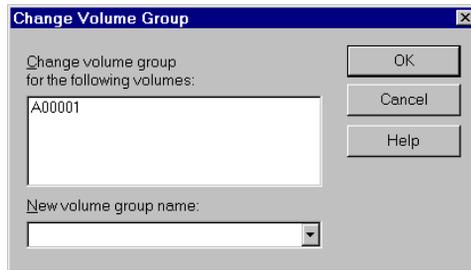
Note Applies to cleaning tapes only.

Specifies the number of cleanings that are allowed for the cleaning tape. This number is decremented with each cleaning and when it is zero, Media Manager stops using the tape. At this point, you can change the cleaning tape or increase the number of cleanings allowed. The choices for this entry are as follows.

Select	Result
Do Not Change	No changes will be made to Number of Cleanings Remaining.
New Count	Allows you to change the number of cleanings.

Changing the Volume Group of a Volume

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media**.
2. In the volume list, select the volumes that you want to change the volume group.
3. Click **Actions > Change Volume Group**.



4. Enter a name in the **New volume group name** box or click the **arrow** to select a name from the list of volume groups.
5. Click **OK**.

The name change is reflected in the volume list entry for the selected volumes. If you specified a new volume group, the group appears under **Volume Groups** in the tree pane.

Replacing Volumes

In general, you should replace volumes that are any of the following:

- ◆ Full
- ◆ Past their maximum allowable number of mounts
- ◆ Too old (past their expiration date)
- ◆ Unusable, for example, because of repeated media errors

The following are two possible procedures for replacing volumes, depending on whether you want to reuse the old media ID.



Replacing a Volume Without Reusing the Media ID

Use this procedure when the volume you are replacing has unexpired images. For example, the volume may be full.

1. Move the volume to another location (see “Moving Volumes” on page 73).

If the volume is in a robotic library, you may want to take it out of the robotic library and move it to a standalone group.

2. Add a new volume or move an existing volume in as a replacement.

If you are adding a new volume, specify the same attributes as the old volume, except for media ID. See “Adding New Volumes” on page 63.

3. Physically replace the old volume, but do not delete the volume entry for that Media ID.

Replacing a Volume and Reusing the Media ID

This procedure lets you reuse the same set of media IDs, which may be convenient in some instances.

Caution Reuse a media ID only if all data on the old volume is no longer needed and you are going to recycle it later, or if the volume is damaged and you are going to discard it. Otherwise, you may encounter serious operational problems and possible loss of data.

1. Delete the volume entry and physically remove the old volume from the storage device. See “When to Delete Volumes” on page 78.
2. Physically add the new volume to the storage device.
3. Logically add the new volume to the configuration and specify the same attributes, including the media ID. See “Adding New Volumes” on page 63.
4. Set a new Expiration Date for this volume. See “Changing the Attributes for a Volume” on page 83.

Recycling Volumes

Caution Recycle a volume only if all data on the volume is no longer needed, or if the volume is damaged and unusable. Otherwise, you may encounter serious operational problems and possible loss of data.

Recycling Volumes Under the Same Media ID

Reusing a NetBackup volume without changing its media ID is usually done when the last image expires. If the volume has unexpired NetBackup images, see “Deassigning Volumes” on page 82.

Recycling Volumes Under a New Media ID

Before changing the media ID and reusing a volume, be certain that it does not have any required data.

1. Physically remove the volume from the storage device.
2. If the volume is in a robotic library, move it to standalone. See “Moving Volumes” on page 73.
3. Record the number of mounts and expiration date for the volume.
4. Delete the volume entry. See “When to Delete Volumes” on page 78.
5. Add the new volume entry, and physically add the volume to the storage device. See “Adding New Volumes” on page 63.
6. Set the expiration date to the value you recorded in step 3.





See “Starting Media Management” on page 43 for an explanation of the **Media** window that you use in the procedures of this chapter.

If you have Backup Exec volumes to manage, see the Backup Exec tape reader option appendix of the NetBackup system administrator’s guide for Windows for more information.

Robot Management Overview

The following topics explain the available Media Manager features for managing volumes in a robotic library.

- ◆ “Robot Inventory Operations (Inventory Robot Dialog)”
- ◆ “Checking Barcodes (Rescan/Update Barcodes Dialog)”

Robot Inventory Operations (Inventory Robot Dialog)

To access the Media Manager robot inventory operations, use the following initial procedure:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media > Robots**.
2. Select the robot you want to inventory.
3. Click **Actions > Inventory Robot**.

The following operations are performed using the functions of the Robot Inventory dialog:

- ◆ **Show Contents**

Inventories the selected robotic library and generates a report showing which volume (media ID) is in each slot. This operation does not check or change the volume database, but is useful for determining the contents of a robot.



For detailed instructions, see “Showing the Contents of a Robot” on page 93.

◆ **Compare Contents with Volume Configuration**

Compares the contents of a robotic library with the contents of the Media Manager volume database. Regardless of the result the volume database is not changed. This is useful for determining if volumes have been physically moved within a robot.

For detailed instructions, see “Comparing Robot Contents with the Volume Configuration” on page 94.

◆ **Update Volume Configuration**

Inventories the selected robotic library and compares the results with the contents of the Media Manager volume database. If there are differences, Media Manager updates the volume database to match the contents of the robot.

For detailed instructions, see “Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 97.

When you select **Update Volume Configuration**, you also have the following capabilities available from the Update section of the dialog:

- **Interactive**

An interactive session allows you to confirm whether to proceed with the update or stop. For instructions, see “Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 97.

- **Empty media access port prior to update**

Allows you to move volumes in the robot’s media access port into the robot. For instructions, see “Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 97.

- **Options**

You can specify options for the update. For example, you can assign media-type mappings if the robot type supports these mappings.

For detailed instructions, see “Changing the Update Options” on page 101.

- **Barcode Rules**

A barcode rule specifies criteria for assigning attributes to new robotic volumes. The attributes are assigned according to the actual barcode that is detected by the robotic library.

For detailed instructions, see “Configuring Barcode Rules” on page 122.

- **Media ID Generation**



Using media ID generation rules allows you to manage your barcodes when you do not want to use the default rule for media ID generation. You control how Media Manager media IDs are created by defining rules that specify which characters of a barcode on tape will be used in the media ID.

For detailed instructions, see “Configuring Media ID Generation Rules” on page 128.

Checking Barcodes (Rescan/Update Barcodes Dialog)

In addition to the functions available in the Robot Inventory dialog, you can check the barcodes of volumes in certain robot types and update the volume database to agree with the contents of the robotic library.

For detailed instructions, see “Rescanning and Updating Barcodes for a Robot” on page 132.

Showing the Contents of a Robot

1. In the dialog box, the **Device host** box contains the name of the host that controls the robot and the **Robot** box contains the robot you selected.

To select a different robotic library on the host, click the **arrow** and select from the list of robots shown.

2. In the Inventory Type section, select **Show Contents**.

To clear any previous display in the Results section, click **Clear**.

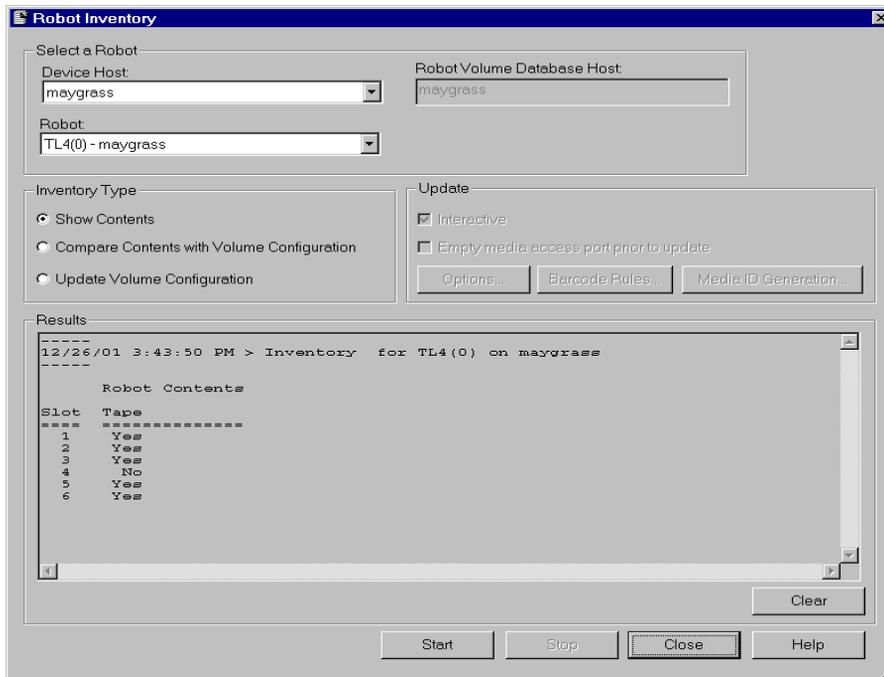
3. Click **Start** to start the inventory.

The inventory report appears in the Results section.

Note For NetBackup BusinessServer the dialog box is similar, but you cannot change the device host.



Show Contents Report



For robots (other than RSM robots) that have a barcode reader, Media Manager obtains the barcode and includes it in the report.

See “Robot Attributes” on page 215 for information on the robots that support barcode readers. These robots can have up to eight characters in the barcodes.

For RSM robots, Media Manager reports what it receives from the Windows 2000 Removable Storage service. The resulting report shows a list of volumes obtained from the service along with their RSM and Media Manager media types.

Comparing Robot Contents with the Volume Configuration

1. In the dialog box, the **Device host** box contains the name of the host that controls the robot and the **Robot** box contains the robot you selected.

To select a different robot on the host, click the **arrow** and select from the list of robots shown.

2. In the Inventory Type section, select **Compare Contents with Volume Configuration**.



To clear any previous display in the Results section, click **Clear**.

3. Click **Start** to start the compare.

Media Manager requests an inventory from the selected robotic library and compares the results with the contents of the volume database.

Note For NetBackup BusinessServer the dialog box is similar, but you cannot change the device host.

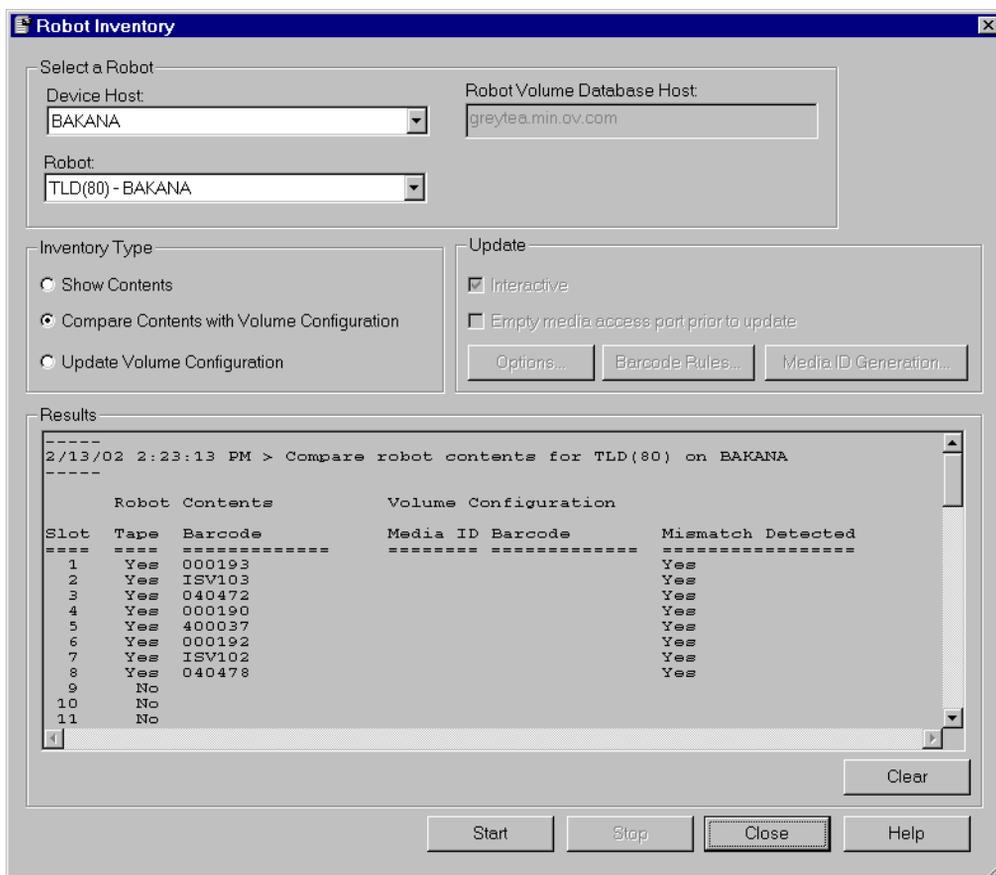
The Results section of the dialog box shows any discrepancies as follows:

- If the robot can read barcodes (see “Robot Attributes” on page 215), the report includes barcode information. Media Manager determines if the barcodes in the robot match those in the volume database.

The following figure shows an example report. For NetBackup BusinessServer the dialog box is similar, but you cannot change the device host.



Compare Contents Report (Non-RSM Robot That Can Read Barcodes)



- For RSM robots, Media Manager determines whether the media ID and media type in the Media Manager volume database matches what it receives from the Windows 2000 Removable Storage service.
 - If the robotic library cannot read barcodes, Media Manager verifies only whether the volume database correctly shows whether a slot contains a volume.
4. If the report shows that the volume database does not match the contents of the robotic library, do one of the following:
- Physically move the volume.
 - Correct the condition by using **Actions > Move** or by updating the volume configuration as explained in “Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 97.



Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot

The following topics explain how to use the Update Volume Configuration feature:

- ◆ When to Use Update Volume Configuration
- ◆ When Not to Use Update Volume Configuration
- ◆ To Update the Volume Configuration for a Robot
- ◆ Changing the Update Options
- ◆ Update Options
- ◆ Examples of Updating a Volume Configuration

These topics explain how to inventory a robotic library, and optionally update the volume database to match the contents of the robotic library. In these topics, *insert* means the volume is placed physically in the robot without using an add or move option to update the volume database, and *remove* means to take a volume out of a robot without using a move or eject command.

If you have inserted new volumes, the configuration update includes creation of media IDs (based on barcodes or a prefix that you specify).

When you use barcode rules, a new volume that is added by using a barcode rule is also assigned a media type, volume pool, maximum number of mounts (or maximum number of cleanings), and description. For instructions on setting up barcode rules see “Configuring Barcode Rules” on page 122.

When to Use Update Volume Configuration

You can use this operation on robots that Media Manager supports, regardless of whether they can read barcodes or not. The Update Volume Configuration operation is useful for updating the volume’s configuration information that is stored in the Media Manager volume database, after performing one of the following tasks:

- ◆ Removing existing volumes from a robotic library.

The operation updates the residence information in the volume database, to show the new standalone location. You specify the volume group to use.

- ◆ Inserting new volumes into a robotic library.

If the robotic library supports barcodes and the volume has readable barcode labels, the operation creates new volume entries in the volume database with media IDs that are based on the last six characters of the barcodes as the default or the specific characters that you specify, if you are using media ID generation rules (see “Configuring Media ID Generation Rules” on page 128).



If the robotic library does not support barcodes or the volumes do not have readable barcodes, the new media IDs are based on a media ID prefix that you specify.

For more information, see “Adding New Volumes” on page 63.

If the robotic library supports barcodes and the volume has a readable barcode, you can use this operation in the following cases. If you are

- ◆ Inserting existing volumes into a robotic library.

The operation updates the residence information in the volume database, to show the new robotic location. This includes the robot host, robot type, robot number, and slot location. You specify the volume group to use.

- ◆ Physically moving existing volumes within a robotic library.

The operation updates the residence information in the volume database, to show the new slot location.

- ◆ Physically moving volumes between robotic and standalone.

The operation updates the residence information in the volume database, to show the new robotic or standalone location.

When Not to Use Update Volume Configuration

The following situations require a move operation, rather than using Update Volume Configuration:

- ◆ After inserting existing volumes into a robotic library, and the volume does not have readable barcodes or the robotic library does not support barcodes.

Without barcodes, Media Manager cannot identify the volume and assigns a new media ID that uses the media ID prefix you select for the update. A volume entry for the old media ID remains in the volume database. An error may occur later, if an application attempts to use the new or old volume.

- ◆ After physically moving existing volumes that do not have readable barcodes or if the volumes are in a robot that does not support barcodes.

If you swap volumes between two different locations, Media Manager is unable to detect the change and cannot update the volume database.

If you remove a volume from a slot and place it in an empty slot, Media Manager assumes it is a new volume. Media Manager then adds a new logical volume entry with a generated media ID at its new robotic location. The volume entry for the old media ID is moved to standalone. An error may occur if an application attempts to use the volume entry with the new or old media ID.

To Update the Volume Configuration for a Robot

1. In the dialog box, the **Device host** box contains the name of the host that controls the robot and the **Robot** box contains the robot you selected.

To select a different robot on the host, click the arrow and select from the list of robots.

2. Check the barcode capabilities of the robotic library and the volume by performing the procedure “Comparing Robot Contents with the Volume Configuration” on page 94.

Determine if the following are true:

- The robotic library supports barcodes.
- Any new volume that was inserted has readable barcodes.

3. If the robotic library does *not* support barcodes or the volume does *not* have readable barcodes, consider the following important points:

- Save the results of the verify, as it may be useful in deciding on a media ID prefix if you use Update Options to assign a prefix later in this procedure.
- For RSM robot types, assign media-type mappings. If you do not, default media types are used.

See “Media Type Mappings (for RSM robots)” on page 110 for instructions.

For RSM robots, media-type mappings are explained in the appendix, “Microsoft Removable Storage Manager (RSM)” on page 269.

4. Create barcode rules (optional).

Barcode rules are used for updating the volume database for a volume that has been inserted into the robotic library.

See “Configuring Barcode Rules” on page 122 for more information.

5. Create media ID generation rules (optional).

Media ID generation rules allow you to manage your barcodes when you do not want to use the default rules for media ID generation. You control how Media Manager media IDs are created by defining rules that specify which characters of a barcode on tape will be used in the media ID.

See “Configuring Media ID Generation Rules” on page 128 for more information.

6. In the Inventory Type section, select **Update Volume Configuration**.

To clear any previous display in the Results section, click **Clear**.



7. If you want the session to be interactive, select **Interactive** (**Interactive** set is the default). If you do not want the session to be interactive, clear **Interactive**.

During an interactive session, Media Manager lists the recommended changes and lets you confirm whether to proceed with the update.

If the session is not interactive, the changes are made without prompting you for confirmation. This allows you to preview and ensure that all new media have barcodes before they are added to the Media Manager volume database.

8. Select **Empty media access port prior to update** to move (inject) one or more volumes in the robot's media access port into the robotic library before initiating the update.

Any volumes to be injected must be in the media access port before the operation begins. If **Empty media access port prior to update** is selected and there are no volumes in the port, you are *not* prompted to place volumes in the media access port and the update operation continues.

Check “Methods for Injecting Volumes into a Robot” on page 60 for a list of robot types that determine when **Empty media access port prior to update** is available and more information on using this function.

Note If you have recently ejected volumes from the robot with the eject or move volume Media Manager commands, remove the volumes from the media access ports before performing an inject with **Empty media access port prior to update** selected. Otherwise, if the entry and exit ports are the same, the volumes that you ejected could be injected back into the robotic library.

9. To view or change the settings for the update, click **Options**. See “Changing the Update Options” on page 101 for instructions.

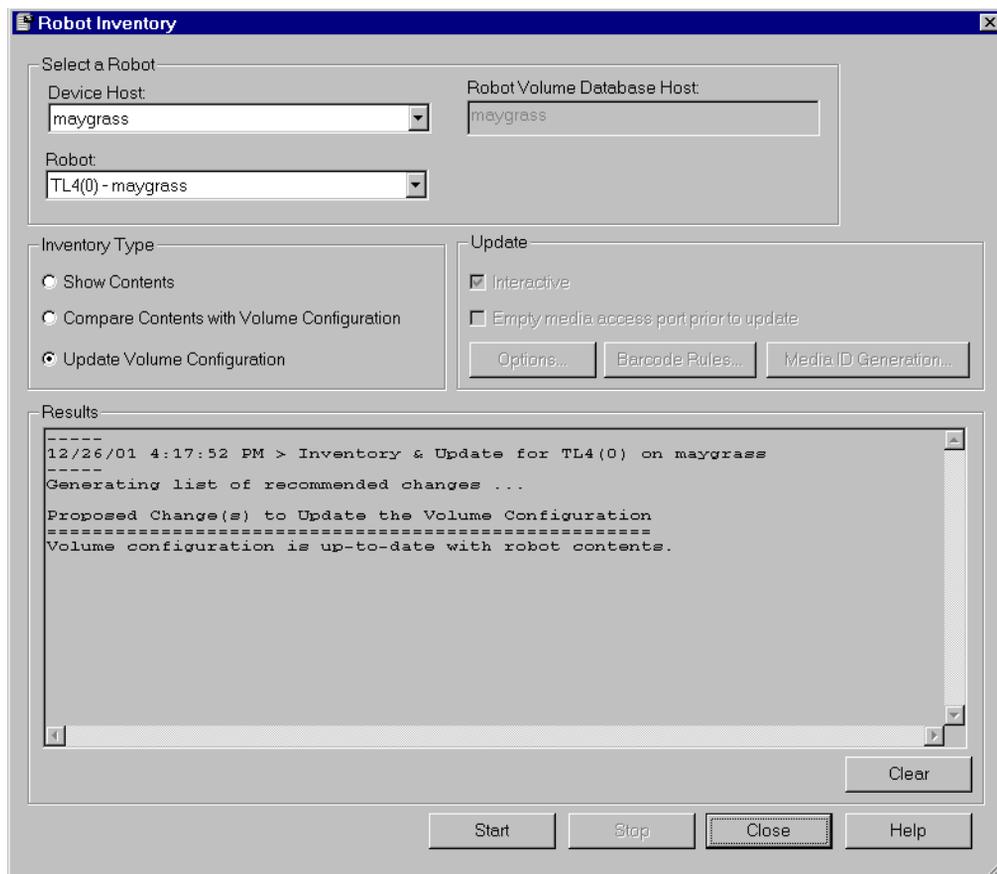
10. Click **Start** to start the update.

The following figure shows example results.

Note For NetBackup BusinessServer the dialog is similar, but you cannot change the device host.



Update Volume Configuration Report

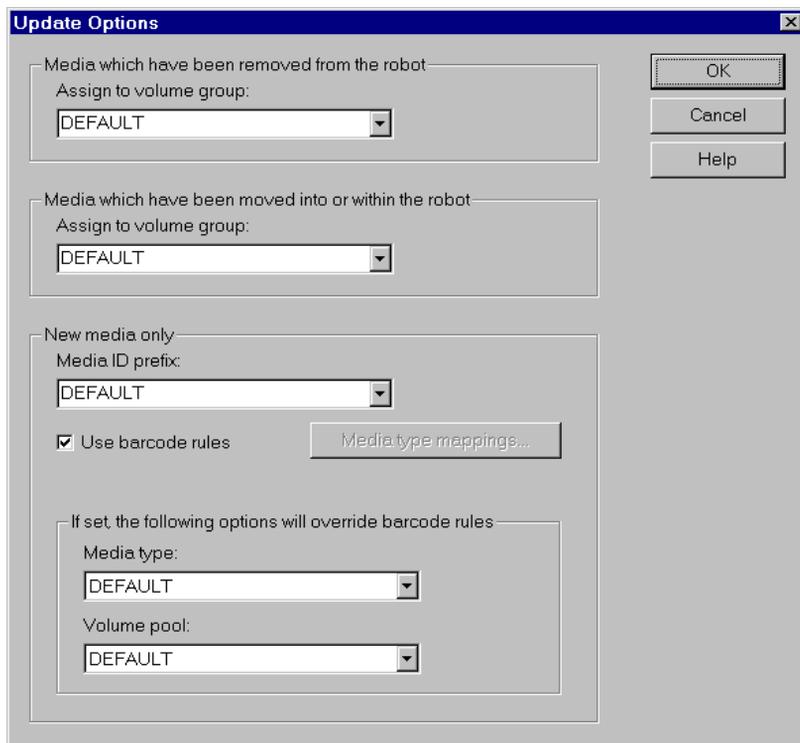


Changing the Update Options

For most configurations, the default update options work well. You should only change the defaults if your configuration has special hardware or usage requirements.

1. In the Robot Inventory dialog box, click **Update Volume Configuration > Options**. See “To Update the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 99 for the complete procedure.
The Update Options dialog box appears.





2. Specify update options properties, as explained in “Update Options” on page 102.
3. When you are satisfied with your settings, click **OK** to return to the Robot Inventory dialog box.
4. Click **Start** to initiate the update.

Update Options

Media Which Have Been Removed From the Robot Assign to Volume Group

Specifies the volume group that Media Manager assigns to volumes that you have removed from the robot.



If you leave the volume group at `DEFAULT` and there is an existing group with a compatible residence for the volume, the volume is added to that group. A compatible residence means the same robot type, robot number, robot host, and media type (DLT and DLT_CLN are considered equivalent in this regard). If a suitable volume group does not currently exist, Media Manager generates a new volume group name.

To change from `DEFAULT`, do one of the following:

- ◆ Enter a volume group name in the box.
- ◆ Click the **arrow** and select from the list of choices for the volume group. This opens a list of choices for the volume group that Media Manager can assign to volumes that you have removed from the robotic library. The list always has the following choices.

Select	To
DEFAULT	Let Media Manager choose the volume group.
AUTO-GENERATE	Automatically generate a new volume group.
NO VOLUME GROUP	Not assign a volume group.

The other available volume group choices in the list depend on the Media Type selection (see “Media Type (for robots that are not RSM robots)” on page 106).

If Media Type is	The list shows existing volume groups that are valid for
DEFAULT	The robot’s default media type (see “Media Type When Not Using Barcode Rules” on page 107).
Not DEFAULT	The specified media type.

Media Which Have Been Moved Into or Within the Robot Assign to Volume Group

Specifies the volume group that Media Manager assigns to volumes that you have inserted into the robot (or moved to a new location within the robot).

If you leave the volume group at `DEFAULT` and there is an existing group with a compatible residence for the volume, the volume is added to that group. A compatible residence means the same robot type, robot number, robot host, and media type (DLT and DLT_CLN are considered equivalent in this regard). If a suitable volume group does not currently exist, Media Manager generates a new volume group name.



To change from **DEFAULT**, do one of the following:

- ◆ Enter a group name in the box.
- ◆ Click the **arrow** and select from the list of choices for the volume group. This opens a list of choices for the volume group that Media Manager can assign to volumes that you have moved into the robotic library. The list always has the following choices.

Select	To
DEFAULT	Let Media Manager choose the volume group.
AUTO-GENERATE	Automatically generate a new volume group.

The other available volume group choices depend on the Media Type selection (see “Media Type (for robots that are not RSM robots)” on page 106).

If Media Type is	The list shows existing volume groups that are valid for
DEFAULT	The robot’s default media type (see “Media Type When Not Using Barcode Rules” on page 107).
Not DEFAULT	The specified media type.

Media ID Prefix

Specify a Media ID prefix, if either of the following conditions exist:

- ◆ The robotic library does not support barcodes.
- ◆ The volume that was inserted does not have readable barcodes.

If the robotic library supports barcodes and the volume has readable barcodes, a prefix is not required because Media Manager creates the media ID in one of the following ways. This is true whether or not a barcode rule is used.

- ◆ As the default, Media Manager assigns the last six characters of the barcode as the media ID.
- ◆ You specify specific characters for the media ID using Media ID generation rules. See “Configuring Media ID Generation Rules” on page 128.

If you want media IDs for media generated based on a specific prefix, you can specify a media ID prefix by entering a prefix or picking a prefix from a list as follows.



Entering a New Value For a Prefix

The prefix is used only for the current operation. It is *not* added to the `vm.conf` file.

Enter a new value for the prefix in the text box. You can specify a prefix having from one to five alpha-numeric characters. Media Manager assigns the remaining numeric characters. For example, if the prefix is NETB, the media IDs are: NETB00, NETB01, and so on.

Picking A Prefix From the List

Click the **arrow** and select a choice for the prefix.

The list will be similar to the following example list. The first two items in this example list are configured media ID prefixes. These prefixes are based on `MEDIA_ID_PREFIX` entries that were added to the `vm.conf` file on the host where you are running NetBackup administration.

```
NV
NETB
DEFAULT
NOT USED
```

See “Media Manager Configuration File (`vm.conf`)” on page 243 for an overview of the `vm.conf` file.

DEFAULT always appears in the selection list. If you select DEFAULT, Media Manager checks the `vm.conf` file for `MEDIA_ID_PREFIX` entries, as shown in the following table:

If <code>vm.conf</code>	Media Manager
Contains prefix entries	Assigns the last one as the default prefix.
Does <i>not</i> contain prefix entries	Uses the letter A, as the default prefix.

NOT USED also always appears in the selection list. If you select NOT USED, the operation succeeds only if the robotic library supports barcodes and the volume has readable barcodes. Otherwise, Media Manager is unable to assign new media IDs and the operation fails. NOT USED may be useful if you are using barcoded volumes and want updates to fail when unreadable or missing barcodes are encountered.



Use Barcode Rules

This check box specifies whether you are using barcode rules or not. The resulting actions are shown in the following table:

If you	Media Manager
Select Use barcode rules	Searches existing barcode rules and applies the rules to new volumes that have been inserted into a robot.
Clear Use barcode rules	Ignores barcode rules.

Media Type (for robots that are not RSM robots)

Note See “Media Type Mappings (for RSM robots)” on page 110 for instructions for specifying Media Type for RSM robot types.

Specifies the media type for the volume that is being added. Click the **arrow** to select from the list of media types that are valid for this robotic library.

The following is an sample list for a TLD robotic library:

```
DEFAULT
1/2" cartridge tape
8MM cartridge tape
DLT cartridge tape
1/2" cleaning tape
8MM cleaning tape
DLT cleaning tape
```

The procedure you follow to select a media type depends on whether you are using barcode rules, as follows:

If you are	See the instructions in
Not using barcode rules	“Media Type When Not Using Barcode Rules” on page 107.
Using barcode rules	“Media Type When Using Barcode Rules” on page 107.

Note Media Type Mappings applies to RSM robot types, but does not apply to any other robot types that are supported on NetBackup BusinessServer hosts.



Media Type When Not Using Barcode Rules

If you are not using barcode rules and you want to use the media type shown in first column of the following table, select the type as shown in the second column.

Media Type	Select
The default media type	<p>DEFAULT.</p> <p>If <i>all</i> of the drives in the robotic library (configured on this robot host) are</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The same type and at least one drive is configured on the robot control host, then Media Manager uses the media type for the drives. - <i>Not</i> the same type, then Media Manager uses the default media type for the robotic library.
A media type other than the default media type	A media type from the list.

The following table shows the default media types for robots when drives are not configured on the robot control host:

Default Media Types for Robots

Robot Type	Default Media Type
Tape Library 4MM (TL4)	4MM cartridge tape
Tape Library 8MM (TL8)	8MM cartridge tape
Tape Library DLT (TLD)	DLT cartridge tape
Tape Stacker 8MM (TS8)	8MM cartridge tape
Tape Stacker DLT (TSD)	DLT cartridge tape
Tape Stacker Half-inch (TSH)	1/2-inch cartridge

Media Type When Using Barcode Rules

If you are using barcode rules and you want to

- ◆ Let the barcode rule determine the media type that is assigned, select DEFAULT as the media type.



Note If you choose `DEFAULT` here and in the barcode rule, Media Manager assigns the default media type for the robotic library.

- ◆ Use a media type other than the default, select a media type from the list.

The update media type always overrides the rule. If you specify any value other than `DEFAULT` in Update Options, the media type for the rule must be the same type or be `DEFAULT` in order to obtain a match (except for cleaning media).

The following table shows the results for various combinations of update and barcode rule media types:

Update Options Media Type	Barcode Rule Media Type	Rule Used	Media Type in Volume Configuration
DLT	DEFAULT	Yes	DLT
HCART	DEFAULT	Yes	HCART
DLT	DLT	Yes	DLT
DLT	DLT_CLN	Yes	DLT_CLN
DLT_CLN	DLT	No	DLT_CLN
DLT_CLN	DLT_CLN	Yes	DLT_CLN
DLT_CLN	DEFAULT	Yes	DLT_CLN
DLT	8MM, 4MM, and so on	No	DLT
DEFAULT	DEFAULT	Yes	DLT
DEFAULT	DLT	Yes	DLT
DEFAULT	DLT_CLN	Yes	DLT_CLN
DEFAULT	8MM, 4MM, and so on	No	Depends on robot type.

The fourth barcode rule in the table shows Media Manager's ability to add cleaning cartridges with regular volumes when you execute an update for a robotic library.

If the volumes that you insert include a cleaning tape, Media Manager adds the volumes correctly, if the following are true:

- The update options media type is for the regular media (DLT in this example).



- The barcode on the volume matches a barcode tag and the barcode rule media type is the cleaning media (DLT_CLN in this example).

Also see “Example 5: Add cleaning tapes to a robot” on page 119.

The sixth and seventh rules in the table illustrate how to add only a cleaning tape. In the sixth rule, you specify the cleaning media type in Update Options and in the barcode rule. In the seventh rule, you specify the cleaning media in Update Options and choose default when you configure the barcode rule.

Volume Pool

Specifies the volume pool. Click the **arrow** and select from the list of volume pools to which you can assign new volumes.

The list will be similar to the following example:

```
DEFAULT
None
NetBackup
DataStore
a_pool
b_pool
```

If you are *using* barcode rules and you want to

Select

Let the barcode rule determine the volume pool that is assigned to new volumes.

DEFAULT.

Use a volume pool other than the default.

That pool name in the list. The Update Options volume pool always overrides the rule.

If you are *not using* barcode rules and you want to use

Select

The NetBackup volume pool for data volumes and no volume pool for cleaning tapes.

DEFAULT.

A volume pool other than the default.

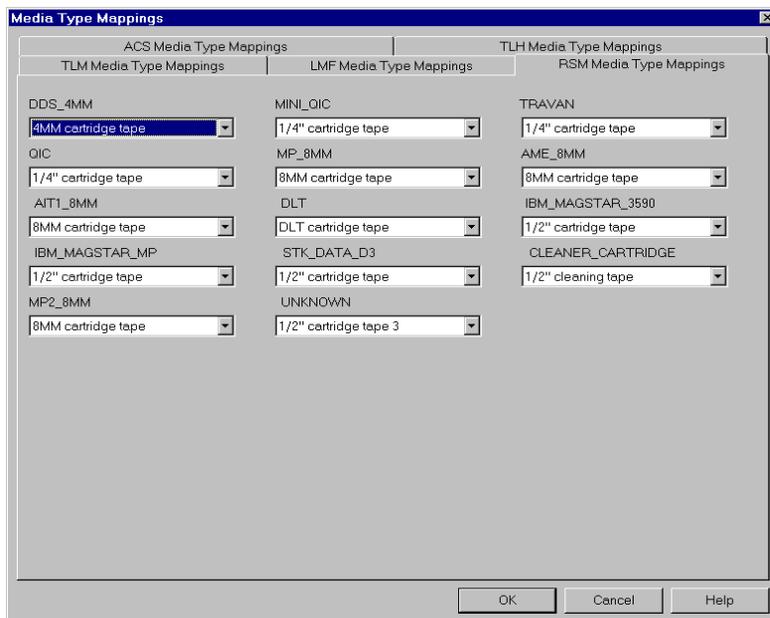
That pool name in the list.



Media Type Mappings (for RSM robots)

For RSM robot types, the Media type setting is always DEFAULT. Media Manager uses the mappings in the Media Type Mappings dialog box to set the media type for new volumes.

Click **Media type mappings** to access this dialog box (**Media type mappings** is available only for this robot type).



In Media Type Mappings, map the media type specified by the robot vendor or operating system software to a corresponding Media Manager type as follows. Your mappings apply only to the current update.

1. Find the appropriate robot vendor media type in the dialog.
2. Click the **arrow** and select a Media Manager type from the list.

You can set the defaults that appear in Media Type Mappings by adding media mappings to the Media Manager configuration file, `vm.conf`.

For information on adding RSM media mapping entries, see “`vm.conf` Map Entries For RSM Robots” on page 274.

If either of the following are true, Media Manager uses the default media type mappings shown in the following table:

- ◆ The `vm.conf` file does not exist.



- ◆ The `vm.conf` file does not contain media mapping entries for that robot type.

Default Media Types for RSM Robots

RSM Media Type	Default Media Manager Media Type
DDS_4MM	4mm cartridge (4MM)
MINI_QIC	1/4-inch cartridge (QCART)
TRAVAN	1/4-inch cartridge (QCART)
QIC	1/4-inch cartridge (QCART)
MP_8MM	8mm cartridge (8MM)
AME_8MM	8mm cartridge (8MM)
AIT1_8MM	8mm cartridge (8MM)
DLT	Digital Linear Tape (DLT)
IBM_MAGSTAR_3590	1/2-inch cartridge (HCART)
IBM_MAGSTAR_MP	1/2-inch cartridge (HCART)
STK_DATA_D3	1/2-inch cartridge (HCART)
MP2_8MM	8mm cartridge (8MM)
CLEANER_CARTRIDGE	1/2-inch cartridge (HC_CLN)
STK_EAGLE	1/2-inch cartridge (HCART)
LTO_ULTRIUM	1/2-inch cartridge (HCART)
LTO_ACCELIS	1/2-inch cartridge (HCART)
UNKNOWN	1/2-inch cartridge tape 3 (HCART3)



Examples of Updating a Volume Configuration

Note The following examples show only the relevant dialog box and volume attributes.

Example 1: Remove a volume from a robot

The following is an example of removing a volume from a robotic library. It does not matter whether the robot supports barcodes.

1. The following are the attributes for media ID 800001.

media ID	800001
media type	8MM cartridge tape
barcode	TL800001
media description	tl8 backup volume
volume pool	NetBackup
robot type	TL8 - Tape Library 8MM
volume group	EXB220
max mounts allowed	0 (unlimited)

2. Assume that you remove the volume from the robotic library, specify the following in the Update Options dialog box, and then execute the update.

media type	DEFAULT
volume group	NONROB_8MM
volume pool	DEFAULT

3. The resulting volume attributes for media ID 800001 are as follows:

media ID	800001
----------	--------



media type	8MM cartridge tape
barcode	TL800001
media description	tl8 backup volume
volume pool	NetBackup
robot type	NONE - Not Robotic
volume group	NONROB_8MM
max mounts allowed	0 (unlimited)

The new residence information in the volume database shows a standalone location in the volume group, specified by the volume group on the Update Options dialog. The media type and volume pool remain unchanged.

The results are the same for a volume that does not have a barcode.

Example 2: Add existing standalone volumes to a robot

The following is an example of adding a standalone volume, that has a barcode, to a robotic library that supports barcodes (TL8).



1. The following are the volume attributes for media ID 800021, which has a readable barcode and already exists as a standalone volume.

media ID	800021
media type	8MM cartridge tape
barcode	TL800021
media description	8MM standalone
volume pool	None
robot type	None (Standalone)
volume group	NONROB_8MM
max mounts allowed	0 (unlimited)

2. Assume that you insert the volume into a TL8 robot, specify the following in the Update Options dialog box, and then execute the update.

media type	DEFAULT
volume group	EXB220
use barcode rules	YES
volume pool	NetBackup

The barcode rules shown in the following table exist:

Barcode Tag	Media Type	Volume Pool	Max Mounts/ Cleanings	Description
CLND	DLT_CLN	None	30	dlt cleaning
CLN8	8MM_CLN	None	20	8mm cleaning
TL8	8MM	NetBackup	0	tl8 backup
DLT	DLT	d_pool	200	dlt backup



Barcode Tag	Media Type	Volume Pool	Max Mounts/ Cleanings	Description
TS	8MM	None	0	8mm no pool
<NONE>	DEFAULT	None	0	no barcode
<DEFAULT>	DEFAULT	NetBackup	0	other barcodes

- Media Manager recognizes that the media ID exists and changes the volume database to reflect the new robotic location, rather than creating a new media ID. The resulting volume attributes for media ID 800021 are as follows:

media ID	800021
media type	8MM cartridge tape
barcode	TL800021
media description	8MM standalone
volume pool	NONE
robot type	TL8 - Tape Library 8MM
robot number	0
robot slot	1
robot host	shark
volume group	EXB220
max mounts allowed	0 (unlimited)

Because the last six characters of the barcode match the media ID of an existing standalone volume in the configuration, the residence information in the volume database is updated to reflect the new robotic location. Since the volume is not new, barcode rules are ignored.

The only option used in the Update Options dialog box is the volume group for added or moved volumes. The media type option was not used because this example was for a single existing volume that already had a media type.



Example 3: Move existing volumes within a robot

The following is an example of moving a volume from one slot to another within the same robot. The robot supports barcodes and the volume has a readable barcode.

Caution For volumes moved within a robotic library, use Update Volume Configuration only if the robotic library supports barcodes and the volumes have readable barcodes. Otherwise, Media Manager is unable to properly recognize the move (see “When Not to Use Update Volume Configuration” on page 98).

1. The following are the attributes for media ID 800002, which currently resides in slot 1 of the robotic library.

media ID	800002
media type	8MM cartridge tape
barcode	TL800002
media description	tl8 backup
volume pool	NetBackup
robot type	TL8 - Tape Library 8MM
robot number	0
robot slot	1
robot host	shark
volume group	EXB220
max mounts allowed	0 (unlimited)

2. Assume that you move the volume to empty slot 10, specify the following in the Update Options dialog box, and then execute the update.

media type	DEFAULT
volume group	EXB220
use barcode rules	NO



volume pool	DEFAULT
-------------	---------

3. The resulting volume attributes are:

media ID	800002
media type	8MM cartridge tape
barcode	TL800002
media description	tl8 backup
volume pool	NetBackup
robot type	TL8 - Tape Library 8MM
robot number	0
robot slot	10
robot host	shark
volume group	EXB220
max mounts allowed	0 (unlimited)

The updated volume attributes show the new slot number, but all other information is unchanged.

Example 4: Add new volumes to a robot

The following is an example of adding new volumes with barcodes to a robot that supports barcodes. Assume the following:

- ◆ The new volume is an 8MM tape with a readable barcode of TL800002.
- ◆ There are no media generation rules defined.
- ◆ The drives in the robot all have a drive type of 8MM or there are no drives configured on the robot control host.



robot number	0
robot slot	1
robot host	shark
volume group	EXB220
max mounts allowed	0 (unlimited)

The media ID is from the last six characters of the barcode since there are no media ID generation rules. The new residence information in the volume database, shows the robot host, robot type, robot number, slot, and host. The volume group is from the Update Options dialog. The volume pool and max mounts allowed are from the barcode rule.

If barcode rules (or barcodes) had not been used, the media description, volume pool, and max mounts allowed would be set to the following defaults:

- Media description: added by Media Manager
- Volume pool: NetBackup for data tapes or None for cleaning tapes
- Max mounts: 0 (unlimited)

Note If the robot does not support barcodes or the barcode is unreadable, you must specify a Media ID prefix (or DEFAULT) in the Update Options dialog box or Media Manager will not add new media IDs.

Example 5: Add cleaning tapes to a robot

A special case exists when adding cleaning tapes. For example, assume you are doing an update for a TLD robot.

1. The tapes you inserted include regular tapes with barcodes ranging from DLT00000 to DLT00010 and a cleaning tape with a barcode of CLN001.

The barcode rules shown in the following table exist:

Barcode Tag	Media Type	Volume Pool	Max Mounts/ Cleanings	Description
CLN	DLT_CLN	None	30	dlt cleaning
DL	DLT	d_pool	200	dlt backup



Barcode Tag	Media Type	Volume Pool	Max Mounts/ Cleanings	Description
<NONE>	DEFAULT	None	0	no barcode

2. You specify the following in the Update Options dialog box and then execute the update.

media type	DLT
volume group	STK7430
use barcode rules	YES

3. The barcodes on the regular tapes match the DL barcode rule and the media type of the DL barcode rule matches the Media type in the Update Options dialog box. These tapes are added as DLT.

The cleaning tape matches the CLN barcode rule and Media Manager recognizes that DLT_CLN is the cleaning tape for DLT. The cleaning tape CLN001 is added as DLT_CLN type media along with the regular volumes.

This illustrates Media Manager's ability to add cleaning cartridges along with regular volumes when you use Update Volume Configuration.

If the volumes you insert include a cleaning tape, Media Manager adds the volumes correctly if the following are true:

- The Media type in the Update Options dialog box is the regular media (DLT in this example).
- The barcode on the volume matches a barcode tag (CLN in this example) and the media type for the barcode rule is the correct cleaning media (DLT_CLN in this example).

To add only cleaning media, specify the cleaning media type in the Update Options dialog box and in the barcode rule (DLT_CLN in this example).

Example 7: Adding existing volumes when barcodes are not used

Caution This example is *NOT* recommended and is shown only to illustrate the results.

The following is an example of adding an existing standalone volume to a TL4 robot. A TL4 robot supports inventory (detects media presence), but not barcodes.



1. The following are the attributes for media ID 400021, which already exists as a standalone volume.

media ID	400021
media type	4MM cartridge tape
barcode	-----
media description	4MM standalone
volume pool	None
robot type	NONE - Not Robotic
volume group	NONROB_4MM
max mounts allowed	0 (unlimited)

2. Assume that you insert the volume into the robot, specify the following in the Update Options dialog box, and then execute the update.

media type	DEFAULT
volume group	00_000_TL4
media ID prefix	C4
volume pool	DEFAULT

3. The resulting volume attributes are:

media ID	C40000
media type	4MM cartridge tape
barcode	-----
media description	Added by Media Manager
volume pool	NetBackup



robot type	TL4 - Tape Library 4MM
robot number	0
robot slot	1
robot host	shark
volume group	00_000_TL4
max mounts allowed	0 (unlimited)

It is *important* to note that Media Manager assigned a new media ID to the volume (C40000). This undesired result occurs if you use Update Volume Configuration to add volumes that do not have readable barcodes or if the robot does not support barcodes. Without a barcode, Media Manager cannot identify the volume and assumes it is new. The media ID C40000 is generated from the media ID prefix on the Update Options dialog.

The old media ID (400021) remains in the configuration unchanged. The information for the new media ID (C40000) shows the robotic location, including the robot host, robot type, number, slot, and host. The volume group and volume pool are according to the Update Options dialog box selections. The max mounts allowed is set to the default (0).

Configuring Barcode Rules

A barcode rule specifies criteria for assigning attributes to new robotic volumes. The attributes are assigned according to the barcode that is detected by the robotic library. You choose whether to use barcode rules when you set up the update operation.

For background information, see “Barcode Rules” on page 234.

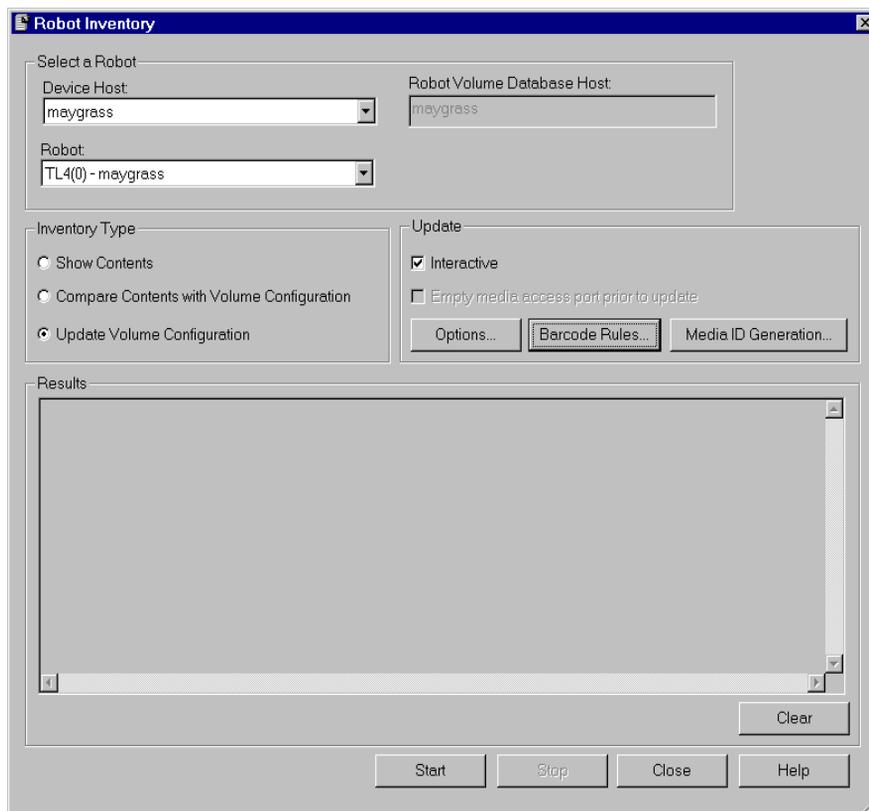
The following topics explain how to use barcode rules:

- ◆ Adding a New Barcode Rule
- ◆ Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Barcode Rules
- ◆ Changing a Barcode Rule
- ◆ Deleting a Barcode Rule



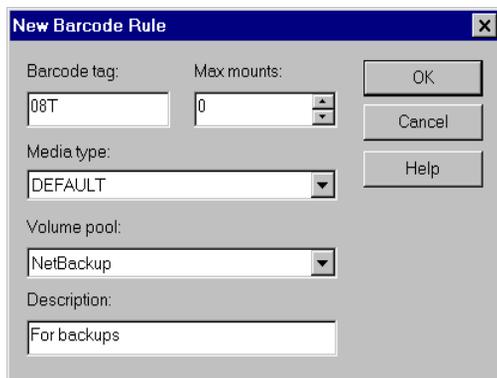
Adding a New Barcode Rule

1. In the Robot Inventory dialog box, click **Update Volume Configuration > Barcode Rules**.



2. In the Barcode Rules dialog box, click **New**. A dialog box appears.





3. Specify the properties for the new barcode rule and click **OK**.

See “Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Barcode Rules” for help on specifying these properties.

Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Barcode Rules

Barcode Tag

Enter a barcode tag for the rule. The tag can have from 1 to 16 characters, but cannot contain any spaces (or special characters that appear as spaces).

In the barcode rule database and in the volume database a barcode tag can have a maximum of 16 characters, but Media Manager only supports the following maximum barcode lengths (in the volume database not all 16 characters are used for all robot types).

- ◆ Eight characters in robots that are not API robots (and the robot also supports barcodes).
- ◆ Six characters in RSM robots.

The following rules can have special characters in the barcode tags:

- ◆ <NONE > - Matches when rules are used and the volume has an unreadable barcode or the robotic library does not support barcodes.
- ◆ <DEFAULT> - For volumes with barcodes, this tag matches when none of the other barcode tags match, providing the media type in the <DEFAULT> rule and the media type in the Update Options dialog box are compatible.

Use Update Options to set up the criteria for a robot update (see “Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 97).



Media Type

Click the **arrow** to select the media type for which this rule will be used, as shown in the following table:

If you want the rule match	Select
Any media type that you select in Update Options	<p>DEFAULT.</p> <p>If you also select DEFAULT in Update Options, Media Manager uses the default media type for the robotic library (see “Media Type (for robots that are not RSM robots)” on page 106).</p>
Only when you select that specific media type or DEFAULT in Update Options	<p>A specific media type from the list.</p> <p>If you select DEFAULT for the update, Media Manager assigns the rule’s media type.</p>

Note Always select DEFAULT for RSM robots.

The following table shows various combinations of update selections and barcode rule media types for a TLD robot.

Update Media Type	Barcode Rule Media Type	Rule Used	Media Type Added To Volume Configuration
DLT	DEFAULT	Yes	DLT
HCART	DEFAULT	Yes	HCART
DLT	DLT	Yes	DLT
DLT	DLT_CLN	Yes	DLT_CLN
DLT_CLN	DLT	No	DLT_CLN
DLT_CLN	DLT_CLN	Yes	DLT_CLN
DLT_CLN	DEFAULT	Yes	DLT_CLN
DLT	,4MM	No	DLT
DEFAULT	DEFAULT	Yes	DLT



Update Media Type	Barcode Rule Media Type	Rule Used	Media Type Added To Volume Configuration
DEFAULT	DLT	Yes	DLT
DEFAULT	DLT_CLN	Yes	DLT_CLN
DEFAULT	4MM	No	DLT (unless drives in the robot are configured on the robot control host with a different type)

When setting up the update operation, a rule is not used if the media type in the rule is not compatible with the media type you select in Update Options. See “Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 97.

For an RSM robot, Media Manager determines whether the media type is compatible by mapping it according to the setting in the media mappings dialog box. See “Media Type Mappings (for RSM robots)” on page 110 for more information.

Volume Pool

Click the **arrow** to select a volume pool for the volume. This is the pool that the volume will be added to, when a barcode matches the rule.

Whenever the barcode rule is used and the Update Options dialog shows

- ◆ DEFAULT for the volume pool, then the volume is assigned to the pool you specified in the barcode rule.
- ◆ A specific volume pool, then that selection overrides the pool you specified in the barcode rule.

Maximum Mounts

Specify the maximum number of mounts or cleanings that are allowed for this volume, as follows:

For	Select
Media other than cleaning tapes	The maximum number of mounts to allow.
Cleaning tapes	The number of cleanings to allow.



When a barcode rule is used, Media Manager adds the number you specify to the volume database for the media ID.

Note When you specify 0 (unlimited), a cleaning tape whose barcode happens to match the rule will be assigned a 0 for Cleanings. This means it will not be used unless you subsequently change Cleanings to another value. You can avoid this situation by carefully selecting the barcodes for your cleaning media.

Description

Enter description. This can be a description of how the barcode rule will be used or any useful description determined by your site. You can enter from 1 to 25 characters.

Changing a Barcode Rule

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media > Robots**.
2. Select the robotic library that has the volume database where you want to change barcode rules.
3. Click **Actions > Inventory Robot**.
4. In the dialog box, click **Update Volume Configuration > Barcode Rules**.
5. In the dialog box, select a rule that you want to change from the rules listed.
6. Click **Change**.
A dialog box appears.
7. Specify your changes.
See “Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Barcode Rules” on page 124 for help in changing the properties of the rule.

Note You cannot change the barcode tag. To change a barcode tag, you must delete the rule and then add a rule with a new tag.



Deleting a Barcode Rule

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media > Robots**.
2. Select the robotic library that has the volume database where you want to change barcode rules.
3. Click **Actions > Inventory Robot**.
4. In the dialog box, click **Update Volume Configuration > Barcode Rules**.
5. In the dialog box, select the rule you want to delete from the list of rules.
6. Click **Delete**.

In the confirmation dialog box, confirm or cancel the delete.

Configuring Media ID Generation Rules

Note To use media ID generation rules, the robotic library must support barcodes and the robot type cannot be RSM.

For background information see “Media ID Generation Rules” on page 236.

The following topics explain how to use media ID generation rules:

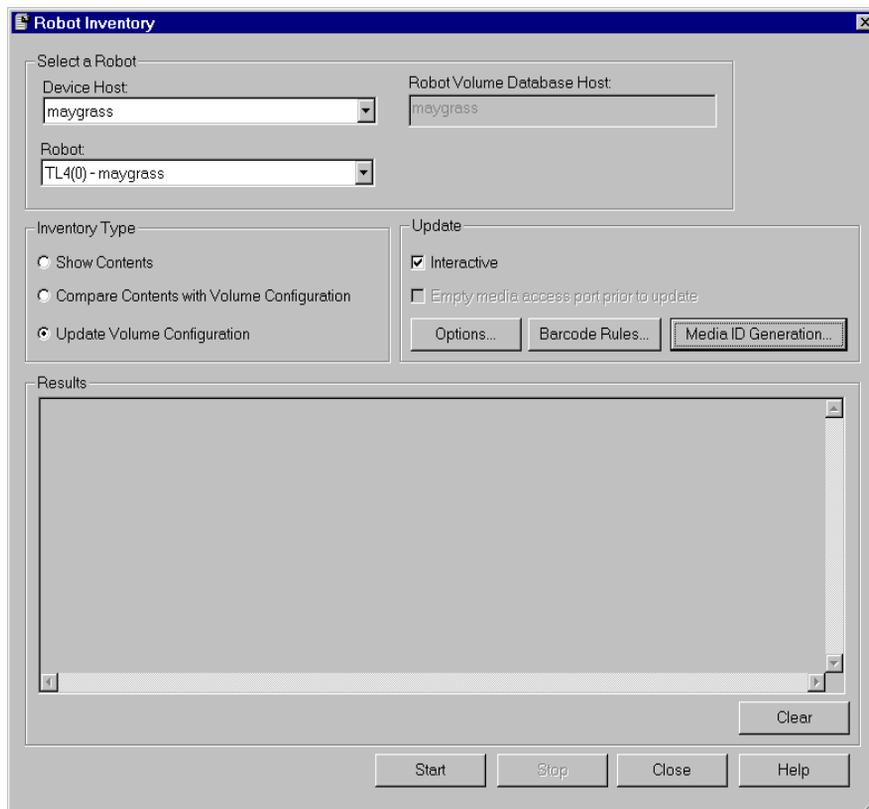
- ◆ Adding a New Media ID Generation Rule
- ◆ Changing a Media ID Generation Rule
- ◆ Deleting a Media ID Generation Rule
- ◆ Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Media ID Generation Rules

Adding a New Media ID Generation Rule

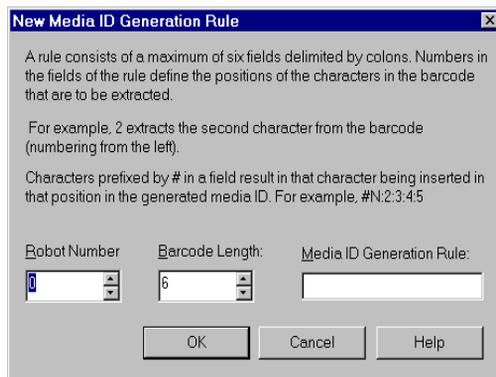
1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media > Robots**.
2. Select the robotic library that has the volume database where you want to change a media ID generation rule.
3. Click **Actions > Inventory Robot**.



4. In the dialog box, click **Update Volume Configuration > Media ID Generation**.



5. In the Media ID Generation dialog box, click **New**. A dialog box appears.



6. Specify the properties for the new media ID generation rule and click **OK**.

See “Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Media ID Generation Rules” on page 131 for help on specifying the rule.

Changing a Media ID Generation Rule

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media > Robots**.
2. Select the robotic library that has the volume database where you want to change a media ID generation rule.
3. Click **Actions > Inventory Robot**.
4. In the dialog box, click **Update Volume Configuration > Media ID Generation**.
5. In the Media ID Generation dialog, select a rule from list.
6. Click **Change**.
7. In the dialog box, specify your changes for the rule. You cannot change the Robot Number or Barcode Length fields.

See “Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Media ID Generation Rules” on page 131 for help in changing the rule.

Deleting a Media ID Generation Rule

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media > Robots**.
2. Select the robotic library that has the volume database where you want to delete media ID generation rules.
3. Click **Actions > Inventory Robot**.
4. In the dialog box, click **Update Volume Configuration > Media ID Generation**.
5. In the Media ID Generation dialog, select a rule or rules from list and click **Delete**.
6. In the dialog box, confirm or cancel the delete action.



Dialog Box Entries for Adding and Changing Media ID Generation Rules

Robot Number

Specify a robot number where this rule will apply.

Barcode Length

Specify the length of the barcode for tapes in this robotic library and for this rule.

Media ID Generation Rule

A rule consists of a maximum of six fields that must be delimited by colons. Numbers in the fields of the rule define the positions of the characters in the barcode that are to be extracted. For example, 2 in a field extracts the second character from the barcode (numbering is from the left). The numbers can be specified in any order.

Characters prefixed by # in a field result in that character being inserted in that position in the generated ID. Any alphanumeric characters that are specified must be valid for a media ID.

The following table shows some examples of rules and the resulting media IDs. You can use rules to create media IDs of many varied formats, but keep in mind that the difference in the label on the media and the generated media ID may make it difficult to keep track of your media.

Eight-character Tape Barcode	Media ID Generation Rule	Generated Media Manager Media ID
032945L1	1:2:3:4:5:6	032945
032945L1	3:4:5:6:7	2945L
032945L1	#N:2:3:4:5:6	N32945
543106L1	#9:2:3:4	9431
543106L1	1:2:3:4:#P	5431P



Rescanning and Updating Barcodes for a Robot

Use the **Rescan/Update Barcodes** command to check the barcodes of volumes in a robotic library and update the volume database to agree with the contents of the robotic library.

Note The **Rescan/Update Barcodes** command does not apply to volumes in RSM robot types.

“Robot Attributes” on page 215 lists the robots that support barcodes.

When to Use Rescan/Update

Use Rescan/Update Barcodes only to fill in barcodes that are missing from the volume database.

For example, if you added a new volume to your configuration but did not physically insert the volume into the robotic library when the logical volume entry was added, the Media Manager volume database will not include the barcode. In this case, you can use this command to fill in the missing barcode, provided that the media has since been physically inserted in the robotic library.

When Not to Use Rescan/Update

Do not use this command to correct reports that show a media ID in the wrong slot. In this case, you must do *one* of the following:

- ◆ Logically move the volume using **Actions > Move**.
- ◆ Logically move the volume using **Inventory Robot**. See “Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 97.
- ◆ Physically move the volume into the correct slot to agree with the volume database.

To obtain an inventory of the robotic library without updating the barcode information in the volume database, select **Show Contents** in the Robot Inventory dialog box.

See “Comparing Robot Contents with the Volume Configuration” on page 94 for more information.

To Rescan/Update Barcodes

To check barcodes and update the volume database:



1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Media > Robots**.
2. Select the robotic library that has the volumes that you want to check and update.
3. In the volume pane, select the volumes.
4. Click **Actions > Rescan/Update Barcodes**.
A dialog box appears with the results of the update.





The Device Monitor provides the tools needed to manage drives and operator service requests.

This chapter explains the Device Monitor and contains the following topics:

- ◆ Starting Device Monitor
- ◆ Using the Device Monitor Window
- ◆ Controlling the NetBackup Device Manager Service
- ◆ Administering Devices on Other Hosts
- ◆ Changing the Operating Mode of a Drive
- ◆ Resetting a Drive
- ◆ Adding or Changing a Drive Comment
- ◆ Handling Pending Requests and Pending Actions
- ◆ Assigning a Drive to a Pending Request
- ◆ Resolving Pending Actions
- ◆ Resubmitting Requests
- ◆ Denying Requests

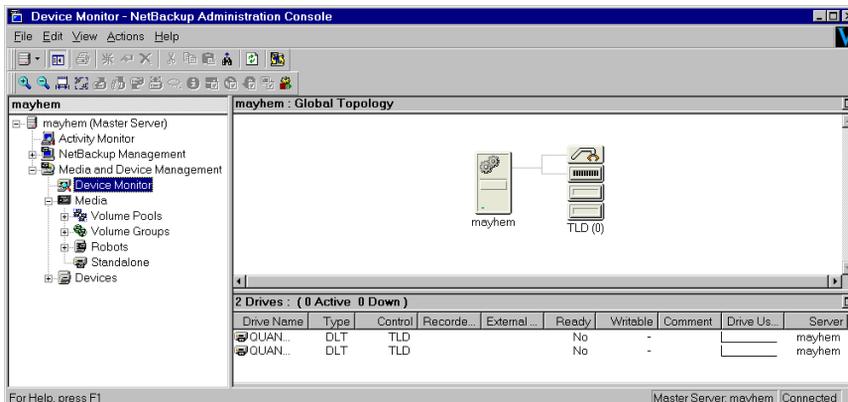
Starting Device Monitor

In the NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Device Monitor**.

The Device Monitor window appears.



Device Monitor Window



In addition to the tree pane on the left, two panes are initially displayed on the right when you start the Device Monitor:

- ◆ A pane showing global device topology.
- ◆ A pane showing drive information.
- ◆ In addition, a third pane for pending requests (or pending actions) is displayed if there is a pending request or pending action active.

Using the Device Monitor Window

The following topics describe various portions of the Device Monitor window:

- ◆ Menus and Commands
- ◆ Toolbars
- ◆ Global Topology Pane
- ◆ Drives Status Pane
- ◆ Pending Requests Pane
- ◆ Status Bar
- ◆ Shortcut Menus and Commands
- ◆ Tool Tips
- ◆ Customizing the Window
- ◆ Allowable Media Manager Characters



Menus and Commands

The Device Monitor window has available the menus and commands shown in the following table.

The menu items are enabled based on what items are currently selected in the topology, drive status, or pending requests panes. For example, if a drive is selected in the topology pane **Up Drive** is enabled on the **Actions** menu.

Device Monitor Menus and Commands

Menu	Commands
File	<p>Change Server - Displays a dialog box that allows you to change to a different NetBackup media server.</p> <p>New Console - Starts another instance of NetBackup Administration Console.</p> <p>New Window from Here - Starts another instance of the NetBackup Administration Console node that was active.</p> <p>Backup, Archive, and Restore - Starts the NetBackup backup, archive, and restore GUI.</p> <p>Print Setup - Displays the standard Windows print setup dialog.</p> <p>Print - Prints the topology, drive status, or pending requests pane (when one of these panes is selected).</p> <p>Close - Closes the current window.</p> <p>Exit - Closes all open windows.</p>
Edit	<p>Find - Displays a dialog to help you find specific data in the columns of the displays.</p>
View	<p>Contains commands for specifying your viewing preferences for the Device Monitor, including showing and hiding the toolbar or tree, and refreshing the display. See “Customizing the Window” on page 148.</p>



Device Monitor Menus and Commands (continued)

Menu	Commands
------	----------

Actions **Note** For NetBackup Datacenter SSO configurations, also see “Changing the Operating Mode of a Drive” on page 150.

Up Drive - Sets the drive to up in automatic volume recognition (AVR) mode. This is the normal and default mode for drives. In AVR mode, a robotic library automatically retrieves, mounts, unmounts, and stores volumes. Manual intervention is necessary only when a request causes an error.

For standalone drives using labeled volumes, when the volume is mounted and the tape drive is ready, Media Manager automatically reads the recorded media ID and assigns the tape drive.

For standalone drives using unlabeled volumes, you assign tape drives to requests using **Actions > Assign Request**.

Up Drive, Operator Control - Sets the drive to up in operator control mode (OPR). This mode is normally used only for security reasons. Do not use this mode for drives that are being used by NetBackup.

This command appears on the menu only if it has been enabled. Click **View > Options > Device Monitor** and select **Allow Drive Up, Operator Controlled**.

By default, all operations are similar as if in AVR mode. If standalone drive extensions have been disabled by using the `DISABLE_STANDALONE_DRIVE_EXTENSIONS` entry in the NetBackup `bp.conf` file, all operations are similar as if in AVR mode except that labeled volumes are not automatically assigned to standalone drives. You must assign a standalone drive to a request using **Actions > Assign Request**.

Down Drive - Sets the selected drive to the DOWN mode, so it is not available to Media Manager. In this mode, drives are not under control of Media Manager and cannot be assigned to requests.

Reset Drive - Resets the specified drive, terminating the drive assignment and taking control away from the assigned user. For more information, see “Resetting a Drive” on page 152.

Change Drive Comment - Displays a dialog box for changing the comment for the selected drive. For NetBackup Datacenter SSO configurations, also see “Adding or Changing a Drive Comment” on page 153.

Drive Details - Displays a dialog with information about the selected drive, including drive properties, drive status, and robotic library information.

Assign Request - Assigns a drive to a pending request.

Deny Request - Denies a pending request.

Resubmit Request - Resubmits a pending request.

Display Pending Action - Displays information about the pending action.

Stop/Restart Device Manager Service - Controls the Media Manager device service.



Device Monitor Menus and Commands (continued)

Menu	Commands
Help	<p>Help Topics - Provides online help information about the NetBackup Console.</p> <p>VERITAS Web Page - Displays the VERITAS web page, if the host has a browser configured.</p> <p>License Keys - Provides information about your active and registered license keys.</p> <p>About NetBackup Administration Console - Displays program information, version number, and copyright information. You can click More Info for more detailed information.</p>

Toolbars

The toolbar buttons of the Device Monitor window provide shortcuts for commands that are on the menus.

To show or hide the toolbar buttons:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Device Monitor**.
2. Click **View > ToolBar**.

To change the display of the toolbar buttons:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Device Monitor**.
2. Click **View > Customize > Toolbars**.

Also see “Customizing the Window” on page 148.

Global Topology Pane

The Device Monitor topology view shows the state of all devices in the global database. It is different from the NetBackup activity monitor topology in that it is a device-centric view. It may show multiple NetBackup servers that are sharing the same devices (NetBackup DataCenter SSO option).

A description bar is displayed at the top of this pane. Tool Tips are provided for all of the objects displayed in the topology pane. See “Tool Tips” on page 147.

Your view of the topology pane can be customized, see “Changing the View of the Topology Pane” on page 148.



Device hosts that are shown can not be filtered by modifying the Media Manager `vm.conf` file. The topology information that is displayed is taken from the Media Manager global device database.

Topology Images

The following images may appear in the topology pane. Shared drives are a NetBackup DataCenter option.

Description	Topology Image
-------------	----------------

NetBackup master server	
-------------------------	--



NetBackup media server	
------------------------	--



Robot	
-------	--



Robot media	
-------------	--



Drive	
-------	--



Drive that is shared	
----------------------	--



There are also a number of state indicators for drives and shared drives. The images are similar, with the shared drive images having a hand at the bottom of the image.

Drive State Indicator	Drive	Shared Drive
Empty		
Tape loaded		
Down		
Reading		
Writing		
Active (reading or writing)		
The control mode for a shared drive is not the same on all hosts sharing the drive.		

Topology Connections

Connections in the topology indicate physical and logical connections of the devices, as follows:

- ◆ Master server and media server relationships are indicated and each has a different icon. Robots and drives are connected to a media server.
- ◆ Drives that are physically located in a robotic library are shown directly below the robotic library. Standalone drives are represented as individual drive objects.



- ◆ Drive to device host connections are shown only if the drive is being used for a request and the drive is in use by NetBackup. Robot to server connections and robotic library to volume database connections are always shown.
- ◆ Media is represented as in a robotic library.
- ◆ The topology also indicates a connection to its volume database host.

Selecting Topology Objects

If you use the **Show only items in list selected in topology** option (see “Customizing the Window” on page 148) and select objects in the topology pane you can filter the contents of the lists in the Drives status pane. This action also highlights the connection lines in the topology.

If you do not use the **Show only items in list selected in topology** option and select an object, the object is highlighted in the other panes.

Multiple objects of the same type can be selected by pressing the Ctrl key and selecting another object. If the Ctrl key is pressed and an object of a different type is selected, the selection is not allowed. If the Ctrl key is not pressed and an object is selected, the previous selection will be unselected.

Drives Status Pane

This pane shows the status of the drives that Media Manager controls on this server. Information in the drive status pane is taken from the Media Manager global device database. The following table describes the columns displayed in this pane.

Managing the Drives Status Pane

The **Edit** menu has commands for finding items and is useful if you are managing many devices. You can use **View > Columns > Layout** to rearrange or hide specific columns in this display. Some of the columns are hidden initially by default.

Drives Status Pane

Column	Description
--------	-------------

Drive Name	Drive name assigned to the drive during configuration.
------------	--

Drives Status Pane

Column	Description
Type	<p>Drive type. Use this column to find a drive that supports the density required by the request. The drive type to use for each density is as follows:</p> <p>4mm: 4mm cartridge 8mm: 8mm cartridge dlt: DLT cartridge hcart: 1/2-inch cartridge qscsi: 1/4-inch cartridge</p>
Control	<p>Control mode for the drive. Control mode can be any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>robot_designation</i>. For drives in a robot. For example, TLD. - DOWN-<i>robot_designation</i>. For drives in a robot. For example, DOWN-TLD. - DOWN. For standalone drives only. In this mode, the drive is not available to Media Manager. <p>A drive can be in a DOWN mode because of problems or because it was set to that mode using Actions > Down Drive.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - PEND-<i>robot_designation</i>. For drives in a robot. For example, PEND-TLD. - PEND. For standalone drives only. <p>If the drive reports a SCSI RESERVATION CONFLICT status, this column will show PEND. This status means that the drive is reserved when it should not be.</p> <p>Several operating systems (Windows, Tru64, and HP-UX) also may report PEND if the drive reports Busy when opened. This reporting is likely caused by errors in the configuration. See the SCSI Reserve/Release section of the NetBackup Shared Storage Option guide for details.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - AVR (up in Automatic Volume Recognition mode). For standalone drives only. This is the normal operating mode. - OPR (up in operator control mode). For standalone drives only. - <Mixed> The control mode for a shared drive is not the same on all hosts sharing the drive (NetBackup DataCenter SSO option only). For shared drives each host can have a different status for the drive. If the control modes are all the same, that mode is displayed. <p>If the drive is a shared drive (NetBackup DataCenter SSO option only), click Actions > Drive Details to view the drive control mode for each host that is sharing this drive.</p>
Shared	<p>This column is used for the NetBackup Datacenter SSO feature. Yes, means this drive is configured as a shared drive. No, means the drive is not a shared drive. For NetBackup BusinessServer this column contains the value No, since this feature is not supported.</p>



Drives Status Pane

Column	Description
Assigned Host	This column shows the device host that currently has the drive assigned. If the selected drive is not assigned, this column is blank.
User	User ID of the person or application whose request is currently assigned to this drive. If the selected drive is not assigned, this column is blank.
Media Label	Shows whether a labeled or unlabeled volume is mounted on this drive. Yes, means labeled. No, means unlabeled. Labeled volumes can also be Backup Exec volumes. A dash means there is no volume mounted on the drive.
Recorded Media ID	ID recorded on the volume mounted on this drive. This identifier is the same as the media ID and should match the external media ID. If no volume or a Backup Exec volume is mounted, this column is blank.
External Media ID	External ID of the volume mounted on this drive. This identifier should match the recorded media ID. If no volume is mounted, this column is blank.
Ready	Status of the drive, indicating if it is ready to perform an operation on the loaded volume. Yes, means ready. No, means not ready. See the vendor's manual for the drive for instructions to make it ready, if it does not become ready automatically.
Writable	Shows whether the volume currently mounted on this drive is write-enabled. Yes, in this column means the volume is write-enabled. No, means the volume is write-protected. A - in this column means there is no volume in the drive.
Drive Use History	Shows a graph of relative drive usage. The data for the graph is obtained from the Windows performance monitor. The graph is shown only if the following are true: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The drive is connected to a Windows media server. - A NetBackup job is active (the drive is in use). - The user has permissions to read the Windows registry. - The NetBackup <code>bp.conf</code> file has the entry for collecting drive usage enabled.
Host Name	The name of the device host that has the drive. If the drive is a shared drive (NetBackup DataCenter SSO option only), use Actions > Drive Details to view a list of hosts that are sharing this drive.
Drive Index	Drive index assigned to the drive during configuration. If the drive is a shared drive (NetBackup DataCenter SSO option only), use Actions > Drive Details to view the drive index for each host that is sharing this drive.



Drives Status Pane

Column	Description
Request ID	If this drive is assigned to a request, this column contains the ID of the request.
Comment	Comments that the administrator has added about this drive. See “Adding or Changing a Drive Comment” on page 153.

Pending Requests Pane

This pane shows pending requests (or pending actions) for volumes. These usually originate from NetBackup, but can come from a user.

This pane is not displayed until a pending request or pending action appears. After all requests have been resolved by Media Manager (automatically) or by operator intervention, the Pending Requests pane is again hidden. See “Handling Pending Requests and Pending Actions” on page 153 for more information.

The following table describes the columns that are displayed in this pane for a pending request or action.

Managing the Pending Requests Pane

The **Edit** menu has commands for finding items and is useful if you are managing many devices. You can use **View > Columns > Layout** to rearrange or hide specific columns in this display. Many of the columns are hidden by default.

Pending Requests Pane

Column	Description
Host Name	The name of the device host that has the pending request.
Request ID	Identification number for the request or action. This is a system-assigned number that identifies the request. NOTE: A pending action is indicated by an asterisk to the left of the request ID.



Pending Requests Pane

Column	Description
Recorded Media ID	<p>Media ID of the volume requested by the user. It is the same media ID that is recorded in the volume database. The ID consists of up to six alphanumeric characters that are recorded at the beginning of the volume to identify the volume.</p> <p>A volume with a recorded media ID is termed a <i>labeled volume</i> (that is, the volume was labeled by NetBackup or Backup Exec). <i>Unlabeled volumes</i> do not have recorded media IDs.</p> <p>When a user requests an unlabeled volume and does not specify a recorded media ID, the external media ID appears in this column by default. This occurs because Media Manager assumes that the recorded and external media IDs are the same.</p>
External Media ID	<p>External media ID of the volume requested by the user. The ID consists of up to six alphanumeric characters and is usually written on an external label attached to the volume. The external media ID is <i>not</i> recorded on the volume and is used to identify the volume before it is inserted in a robotic library.</p>
User	<p>User ID of the person or application making the request.</p>
Density	<p>Density of the volume required by the user. You must mount the volume on a drive that supports the required density.</p> <p>Densities correspond to the following drive types (to find a drive of the correct type, check the drive status list.):</p> <p>4mm: 4mm cartridge tape 8mm: 8mm cartridge tape dlt: DLT cartridge tape hcart: 1/2-inch cartridge tape qscsi: 1/4-inch cartridge tape</p>
Mode	<p>Specifies whether the volume should be write-enabled. W in this column means you must write-enable the volume. R in this column means you do not have to write-enable the volume, unless specified by site policy. To write-enable a cartridge volume, move the tab off the safe position.</p>
Time	<p>Time of day the user made the request for access.</p>
Media Description	<p>Describes the media in 25 or less alphanumeric characters. You create the description when you configure volumes.</p>
Barcode	<p>Alphanumeric representation of the barcode label on the volume that was requested by the user. The barcode can contain up to 13 characters.</p>



Pending Requests Pane

Column	Description
Volume Group	Volume group to which this volume belongs. A volume group defines the volume by location and is a logical group of volumes that are at the same physical location.

Status Bar

The status bar appears at the bottom of the NetBackup Console window. The status bar

- ◆ Shows tool tips (if tool tips are enabled).
- ◆ Indicates the name of the media server.
- ◆ Indicates if you are connected to the device host you are trying to monitor.

To show or hide the status bar

- ❖ Click **View > Status Bar**.

Shortcut Menus and Commands

Clicking the right mouse button while the pointer is over a pane or a selection in a pane, displays a shortcut menu with commands that apply to that context. These shortcut commands are also available on the menus or toolbars.

Tool Tips

Tooltips are helpful information for the toolbar buttons, or items in the topology pane (as you position the pointer).

To enable tool tips

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Device Monitor**.
2. Click **View > Customize**.
3. On the **Toolbars** tab, select **Show ToolTips**.



Customizing the Window

The **View** menu has options for sorting and changing the layout and appearance of the panes.

Showing or Hiding Columns

You can use **View > Columns > Layout** to show or hide columns in the panes of the Device Monitor window.

Rearranging Columns

You can use **View > Columns > Layout** to rearrange the order of columns in the panes of the Device Monitor window.

Changing the View of the Topology Pane

Click **View > Options > Device Monitor** and select **Fit topology to window on startup**. This will fit the topology diagram to the pane and not use the default startup size.

Click **View > Options > Device Monitor** and select **Show only items in list selected in topology**. This allows you to filter the Drives status pane, showing drives based on your selections in the topology diagram.

Click **View > Zoom > Zoom In** to enlarge the topology diagrams. This can be done multiple times.

Click **View > Zoom > Zoom Out** to decrease the size of the topology diagrams. This can be done multiple times.

Click **View > Zoom > Overview Window** to select and focus on a portion of the topology diagram.

Click **View > Zoom > Fit Window** to size the topology diagram to the size of the current pane.

Changing the Screen Display Refresh Rate

The refresh rate specifies how often the Device Monitor will query the device host for new display data.

Click **View > Options > Device Monitor** and set the desired refresh rate.

Allowable Media Manager Characters

The following set of characters can be used in user-defined names, such as drive comments and drive names that you enter when creating these entities. These characters must be used even when specifying these items in foreign languages.

Do not use a minus as the first character or leave any spaces between characters.

- ◆ Alphabetic (A-Z a-z)
- ◆ Numeric (0-9)
- ◆ Period (.)
- ◆ Plus (+)
- ◆ Minus (-)
- ◆ Underscore (_)

Controlling the NetBackup Device Manager Service

The NetBackup Device Manager service must be running on the host being monitored or the lists in the Device Monitor detail panes will be blank. You can manage this service as follows:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Device Monitor**.
2. Click **Actions > Stop/Restart Device Manager Service**.
3. In the dialog box that appears, click the **arrow** to select a different device host.
The current status field shows the status of this service. The dialog allows you to start, stop, or stop/restart the service.
4. Select the action you want to perform.
5. Click **OK** or **Apply** when done.

Note You may find it useful to select **Stop** and click **Apply**, and then select **Start** and click **Apply**.



Administering Devices on Other Hosts

Initially, you can monitor devices on the server where you are running the Device Monitor. The name of this server and its connection status is shown in the status bar (on the right side) of the Device Monitor window, for example Master Server: spain.

If you change from a NetBackup DataCenter server to a NetBackup BusinessServer server, the functionality available on the new server is limited to the functionality supported by NetBackup BusinessServer.

If you change from a NetBackup BusinessServer server to a NetBackup DataCenter server, complete functionality is available on the new server.

To change to a different server, use the following procedure:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Device Monitor**.
2. Click **File > Change Server** or click the **arrow** next to the change server icon.

In the dialog box for **File > Change Server**, do one of the following to specify the host to monitor:

- Enter the name of the host.
- Select a host from one of the hosts shown in the list.
- Click **Browse** and select a host.

You can also click **Remove** to delete a host from the list of hosts.

Click **OK**.

3. The name of the new device host appears in the status bar and the lists in the Device Monitor window change to show device information for the new device host.

The NetBackup Device Manager service must be running on the host that you are going to monitor, or the lists in the detail panes will be blank. If it is not running when you attempt to connect, a message box prompts you to start the service. Click **Yes** in this box.

Changing the Operating Mode of a Drive

It is usually not necessary to change the operating mode of a drive. Drives are set to the UP in AVR mode (the default mode) when you add drives to your configuration, and usually can be left at that setting. Other operating mode settings are used for special purposes.



For RSM robots, Media Manager does not scan the RSM library to update the status for devices. Therefore any physical device status changes done in the Microsoft RSM applet should also be updated in the Device Monitor.

For example, if drive 2 is down in the RSM library, you must deactivate the drive on both the RSM applet *and* in Device Monitor. However if drive 2 is functional but you do not want NetBackup to assign it, then only the RSM applet interface need be updated.

To change the mode of a drive, do the following:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Device Monitor**.
2. In the Drives status pane, select a drive or drives.
3. From the **Actions** menu, choose the command for the new operating mode you want (for example, **Down Drive**).

See the **Actions** menu in “Menus and Commands” on page 137 for an explanation of the operating mode commands.

Changing Mode Example

The following example shows the results of changing the operating mode of Drive2 from AVR to DOWN.

Note Some columns of the drive status list are not shown in this example.

The following example display shows the Drives status pane *before* changing the drive mode. Notice that the Control column shows AVR and the Ready column shows Yes.

Drive	Type	Control	User	Label	MediaID	MediaID	Ready	Writable	RequestID
Drive1	qscsi	OPR	chg	No	TST401	TST401	Yes	No	0
Drive2	4mm	AVR					Yes		

The following display shows the Drives status pane *after* using **Actions > Down Drive** to change the operating mode of Drive2 to DOWN. Notice that the Control column shows DOWN and the Ready column now shows No.

Drive	Type	Control	User	Label	MediaID	MediaID	Ready	Writable	RequestID
Drive1	qscsi	OPR	chg	No	TST401	TST401	Yes	No	0
Drive2	4mm	DOWN					No		



Resetting a Drive

Caution Do not reset an assigned drive unless directed by site policy or the system administrator. Terminating an active job can destroy user data.

The actions that result from resetting a drive, depend on the state of the drive as follows:

Drive State	Reset Action
DOWN	Media Manager attempts to unload the drive. This occurs for standalone drives, as well as drives in a robot.
UP state, not assigned to a user or application and in a ready state	Media Manager attempts to unload the drive. If the drive is not ready, no action occurs.
UP state and assigned to a user or application	Removes the tape. This takes control away from the user.

Use the reset capability with caution. A situation where resetting a drive might be necessary is if a system problem causes the drive to remain assigned after a job is complete. In this case, the drive cannot be used for another request and the only way to regain control of the drive is to reset it.

Note Resetting a drive does not perform any SCSI bus or SCSI device resets.

To reset a drive:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Device Monitor**.
2. In the Drives status pane, select a drive or drives.
3. Click **Actions > Reset Drive**.
4. Verify that the assignment was terminated by checking that the User and Request ID columns are empty for the drive number.

Adding or Changing a Drive Comment

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Device Monitor**.
2. In the Drives status pane, select the drive.
3. Click **Actions > Change Drive Comment**.
The dialog box shows the current comment (if any).
4. Enter a comment or change the comment and click OK.

Handling Pending Requests and Pending Actions

In the following topics, the *operator* is the person responsible for performing the manual intervention. A *user* is a person or application (for example, NetBackup) that initiates requests.

When NetBackup needs a volume to complete a tape mount, it displays a request in the Pending Requests pane. The following is an example request:

Note Some columns of the pending requests pane are not shown in this example.

```

                Recorded External
RequestID User MediaID MediaID Density Mode Time Barcode Volume Group
0          ldr LDR001 LDR001 4mm      Write 7:22 LDR001 rack_1

```

See the table in “Pending Requests Pane” on page 145 for an explanation of the columns in a pending request display.

Media Manager is able to resolve most requests automatically. For example, if the required volume is labeled and in a robotic library, Media Manager assigns the request as soon as the volume and a drive are available, and then removes the request and also the Pending Requests pane.

Pending Requests

Media Manager sometimes needs operator assistance to complete a tape mount request. In the following cases, Media Manager is unable to automatically assign the request and the request remains in the Pending Requests pane. In any of these cases, proceed as explained in “Assigning a Drive to a Pending Request” on page 154.



- ◆ The required drive is in the Up Under Operator Control mode (OPR mode) and standalone drive extensions were disabled by using the `DISABLE_STANDALONE_DRIVE_EXTENSIONS` entry in the NetBackup `bp.conf` file.
- ◆ The volume in a drive is unlabeled (and the volume being mounted is not a known Backup Exec tape).
- ◆ NetBackup issues a write request for an unlabeled volume in a standalone drive and the standalone drive extensions were disabled.

A request for a volume that is displayed in the Pending Requests pane is sometimes called a *mount* request. This term means to make the volume available for reading or writing by placing it in an appropriate drive and then assigning the associated request to that drive.

Pending Actions

Media Manager also needs operator assistance to complete a tape mount request when the request causes an error. These special requests are called *pending actions*.

A pending action is indicated by an asterisk to the left of the request ID column.

In these cases, the problem must be resolved before proceeding. See “Resolving Pending Actions” on page 157.

Assigning a Drive to a Pending Request

Use the following procedure to assign a drive to a pending request.

Note You can also assign drives to a request by using the mouse to select and drag and drop items between the drive status and pending requests panes.

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Device Monitor**.
2. In the Pending Requests pane, select the request. Also, note the contents of the following columns of the request:

See Column	To Determine
Density	The recording density that is required.
External Media ID	The ID of the media that is required.

See Column	To Determine
Mode	Whether the volume should be write-enabled.

3. In the Drives status pane:
 - a. Find a drive type that matches the density for the request.
See the table in “Drives Status Pane” on page 142 for a list of the densities that each drive type supports.
 - b. Ensure that the drive is in the Up mode and not assigned to another request.
 - c. Select the drive.
4. If necessary, get the media, write-enable it, and insert it into the drive.
5. Wait for the drive to become ready, as explained in the drive equipment manual.
6. Click **Actions > Assign Request**.
Verify that the request disappears from the Pending Requests pane.
7. In the Drives status pane, verify that
 - The assigned request ID appears in the Request ID column for the drive.
 - The User column is filled in.

Assigning a Drive Example 1

Note Some columns of the drive status and pending requests panes are not shown in this example.

In this example, a pending request is assigned to a drive using **Actions > Assign Request**. The following sample display shows the Pending Requests pane *before* assigning the request.

```

Recorded External
RequestID User MediaID MediaID Density Mode Time Barcode Volume Group
2          cas  CAS135  CAS135  4mm    Read  7:30 CAS135  offsite

```

The following display shows the Drives status pane *before* assigning the request. Notice that Drv2 is available (the User and Request ID columns are empty) and is in OPR mode.

```

Recorded External

```



Drive	Type	Control	User	Label	MediaID	MediaID	Ready	Writable	RequestID
Drv1	qscsi	OPR	rhs	No	TST401	TST401	Yes	No	0
Drv2	4mm	OPR					Yes		

The following display shows the Drives status pane *after* the request is assigned to Drv2. Notice that for Drv2, the Request ID column now shows request 2 and the User column shows cas as the user.

Drive	Type	Control	User	Label	MediaID	MediaID	Ready	Writable	RequestID
Drv1	qscsi	OPR	rhs	No	TST401	TST401	Yes	No	0
Drv2	4mm	OPR	cas		CAS135	CAS135	Yes	Yes	2

The Pending Requests pane shows that the request has been cleared.

RequestID	User	MediaID	MediaID	Density	Mode	Time	Barcode	Volume	Group

Assigning a Drive Example 2

This example shows how to satisfy a typical request where drives are up under Automatic Volume Recognition control (AVR mode).

Note Some columns of the drive status and pending requests panes are not shown in this example.

1. Assume that you have the following pending request. The contents of the pending request line determine how to proceed.

RequestID	User	MediaID	MediaID	Density	Mode	Time	Barcode	Volume	Group
4	NBU	TV101	TV101	4mm	Write	1:35	TV101	nonrob	

The first step is to find an available tape drive. The request specifies a recording density of 4mm. This means you need a 4mm cartridge tape drive. The volume is labeled so you do *not* have to assign the drive using **Actions > Assign Request**.

2. Check the Drives status pane to see if an appropriate tape drive is available.

Drive	Type	Control	User	Label	MediaID	MediaID	Ready	Writable	RequestID
Drive1	dlt	AVR					No		
Drive2	4mm	AVR					No		

Drive2 is a 4mm cartridge tape drive and is available, since it is not down and there is not a request number in the Request ID column. See the table in “Drives Status Pane” on page 142 for an explanation of each column in the drives status list.

3. Get the volume with the external media ID of TV101 and barcode of TV101. Depending on your site's use of the Volume Group column, the volume group may give an indication of where the media ID is located.
4. Insert the volume into the drive. Assume that the tape drive is powered on and ready to receive the volume. Also, assume that when you insert the volume, the tape drive loads and positions it to the beginning.
5. Check the Drives status pane to verify that the drive is automatically assigned to request ID 4.

The following display shows that the assignment was successful. Drive2 is assigned to request 4, which is a request to write information on labeled volume TV101.

Drive	Type	Control	User	Label	Recorded MediaID	External MediaID	Ready	Writable	RequestID
Drive1	dlt	AVR					No		
Drive2	4mm	AVR	NBU	Yes	TV101	TV101	Yes	Yes	4

In this example, the drive is up in AVR mode as indicated by AVR in the Control column. This means Media Manager assigned it automatically (which it does in AVR mode, providing the recorded media ID on the volume header matches the media ID for the request).

The write operation proceeds. When complete, NetBackup or the `tpunmount` command requests Media Manager to release the drive and Drive2 is available for other requests.

Resolving Pending Actions

A pending action is indicated by an asterisk to the left of the request ID column.

The procedure for resolving a pending action follows:

1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Device Monitor**.
2. In the Pending Requests pane, select the pending action.
3. Click **Actions > Display Pending Action**.

This opens a message box with a description of the problem and a list of possible actions to correct it. The message box also shows other information, such as user name, recorded media ID, external media IDs, and drive number.

4. Click **OK** after viewing the information.



5. In most cases, you can do one of the following to resolve the action:
 - Correct the error condition and resubmit the request.
See “Resubmitting Requests” on page 158
 - Click **Actions** > **Deny Request** to deny the request.
See “Denying Requests” on page 158.

Resubmitting Requests

The procedure to resubmit a request follows:

1. Correct the problem identified by the pending action message.
2. In the Pending Requests pane, select the request.
3. Click **Actions** > **Resubmit Request**.

The pending action message disappears from the Pending Requests pane and the operation proceeds.

If a pending action message involves a robotic library, after correcting the problem you may need to resubmit the request that caused the message before the operation can proceed. For example, if a volume is requested after being removed from a robotic library, do the following:

1. Insert the volume in the robotic library.
2. Perform an Update Volume Configuration.
See “Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 97 for complete instructions.
3. Resubmit the request.

Denying Requests

Some situations may require you to deny requests for service (for example, when drives are not available, you cannot find the volume, or the user is not authorized to use it). Denying a request returns an error message to the user.



1. In NetBackup Administration Console, click **Media and Device Management > Device Monitor**.
2. In the Pending Requests pane, select the request.
3. Click **Actions > Deny Request**.

The request is removed from the Pending Requests pane.





Media Manager Commands and Processes

A

This appendix describes Media Manager commands and Media Manager processes. These commands can be executed from a Windows command prompt.

The remaining commands in this appendix are for device management and are started or stopped by the NetBackup Device Manager service (`ltid`) as needed.

- ◆ `tpreq` and `tpunmount` are user commands for requesting tape mounts and unmounts for configured drives.
- ◆ `tpautoconf` (for NetBackup DataCenter only), `tpclean`, `tpconfig`, and `vmopr cmd` are administrative commands for device management.
- ◆ `vmadd`, `vmchange`, `vmcheckxxx`, `vmdelete`, `vm pool`, `vmquery`, `vmrule`, and `vmupdate` are administrative commands for media management.

The following conventions are used in the command descriptions:

- ◆ Brackets [] indicate that the enclosed component of the command line is optional.
- ◆ A vertical bar (or the pipe symbol) | separates optional arguments.

For example, if a command has the following format, you can choose `arg1` or `arg2` (but not both):

```
command [arg1 | arg2]
```

- ◆ Italics indicate that the information is user supplied.



rsmd

NAME

rsmd - Removable Storage Manager (RSM) process

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\rsmd
```

DESCRIPTION

`rsmd` interfaces with Media Manager to automatically mount and unmount tapes that are under Microsoft Windows 2000 Removable Storage Manager (RSM) control.

`rsmd` is initiated by the NetBackup Device Manager service (`ltid`), if the Media Manager device configuration shows drives in a robot controlled by RSM (the Media Manager robot type is `rsm`). Use the Windows Services applet to stop the NetBackup Device Manager service.

`rsmd` performs its tasks by sending requests to the Microsoft RSM service which communicates with the driver that controls the robot.

When the connection is established, `rsmd` puts the RSM robot in the UP state and can mount and unmount tapes. If the connection cannot be established or robot errors exist, `rsmd` changes the robot to the DOWN state. In this state, `rsmd` is still running and returns the robot to the UP state when the problem no longer exists.

The Internet service number for `rsmd` must be in `%SystemRoot%\system32\drivers\etc\services`. To override the services file, create the file `install_path\Volmgr\database\ports\rsmd` with a line that contains the service number for `rsmd`. The default service number is 13719.

ERRORS

Media Manager logs any RSM and network errors to the Windows 2000 application event log. Log entries are also made when the state changes between UP and DOWN.

tl4d

NAME

tl4d - Tape Library 4MM (TL4) process

SYNOPSIS

install_path\Volmgr\bin\tl4d

DESCRIPTION

tl4d interfaces with Media Manager to mount and unmount tapes in a Tape Library 4MM (TL4) robot. It is initiated by the NetBackup Device Manager service (ltid), if the Media Manager device configuration shows drives in the robot. Stopping ltid stops tl4d.

tl4d communicates with the robotics through a SCSI interface. When the connection is established (the path for robotics can be opened), tl4d puts the TL4 robot in the UP state and can mount and unmount tapes. If the robotics are inaccessible, tl4d changes the robot to the DOWN state. In this state, tl4d is still running and returns the robot to the UP state if it is able to make a connection.

The media ID and slot number information for 4 mm tapes in a robot must be defined in the Media Manager volume database before any tapes can be accessed through the NetBackup Device Manager service and tl4d.

If a cleaning volume is used, it must be defined in the volume configuration. See tpclean for information on setting the frequency for automatic drive cleaning.

The Internet service number for tl4d must be in %SystemRoot%\system32\drivers\etc\services. To override the services file, create the file *install_path*\Volmgr\database\ports\tl4d with a single line that contains the service number for tl4d. The default service number is 13713.

ERRORS

Media Manager logs any Tape Library 4MM and robotic errors to the Windows application event log. Log entries are also made when the state changes between UP and DOWN.



tl8d

NAME

tl8d, tl8cd - Tape Library 8MM (TL8) process and control process

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\volmgr\bin\tl8d
```

```
install_path\volmgr\bin\tl8cd
```

DESCRIPTION

tl8d and tl8cd interface with Media Manager to mount and unmount volumes in a Tape Library 8MM robot.

tl8d directly interfaces with the NetBackup Device Manager service (ltid). A tl8d process runs on each host with a drive connection and sends mount and unmount requests to the control process (tl8cd). tl8cd communicates with the robotics through a SCSI interface.

For NetBackup DataCenter, Tape Library 8MM robotic control software permits drives in the same robot to be configured on different hosts. tl8cd may be running on a different host than tl8d, depending on where the SCSI connection resides (see EXAMPLES). When the connection is established (that is, the path for robotics can be opened), tl8d puts the TL8 robot in the UP state and can mount and unmount volumes. If the robotics are inaccessible, tl8d changes the robot to the DOWN state. In this state, tl8d is still running and returns the robot to the UP state if tl8cd is able to make a connection.

Note If drives are on different NetBackup DataCenter hosts, the robotic information must be entered in the Media Manager configuration on all machines and the robot number must be the same on all machines.

tl8d and tl8cd are started when the NetBackup Device Manager service is started and stopped when this service is stopped.

The control process, tl8cd, is on the host that has the robotic control and is automatically started by tl8d on that host (see EXAMPLES). tl8cd is stopped when you stop the NetBackup Device Manager service.

The media ID and slot number information for volumes in a robot must be defined in the volume database before any volumes can be accessed through the NetBackup Device Manager service, tl8d, and tl8cd.

If a cleaning volume is used, it must be defined in the volume configuration. See tpclean for information on setting the frequency for automatic drive cleaning.



If the `vm.conf` configuration option `PREVENT_MEDIA_REMOVAL` is enabled when `t18cd` is active, `t18cd` disables access to the volumes and media access port by issuing a command to the TL8 robot. If it is necessary to open the door of the cabinet, you must terminate `t18cd` first. By default, access to the library is allowed.

The drives are logically numbered 1 through n , where n is the number of drives in the robotic library. Use one or more of the following to determine the correct robot drive numbers:

- ◆ The Device Configuration wizard (if the robotic library and drives support serialization).
- ◆ The Robot Drive and Slot Layout appendix in the NetBackup Media Manager system administrator's guide.
- ◆ The robotic library vendor's documentation on drive indexing.
- ◆ The robotic test utility, or experiment by mounting media and watching the operator display.

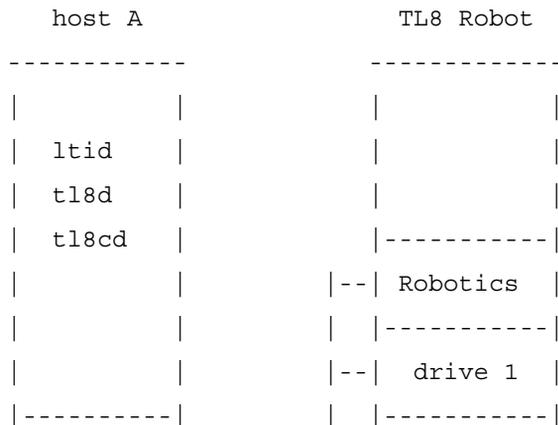
The Internet service number for `t18cd` must be in `%SystemRoot%\system32\drivers\etc\services`. To override the services file, create the file `install_path\Volmgr\database\ports\t18cd` with a single line that contains the service number for `t18cd`. The default service number is 13705.

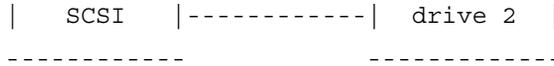
ERRORS

Media Manager logs any Tape Library 8MM and robotic errors to the Windows application event log. Log entries are also made when the state changes between UP and DOWN.

EXAMPLES

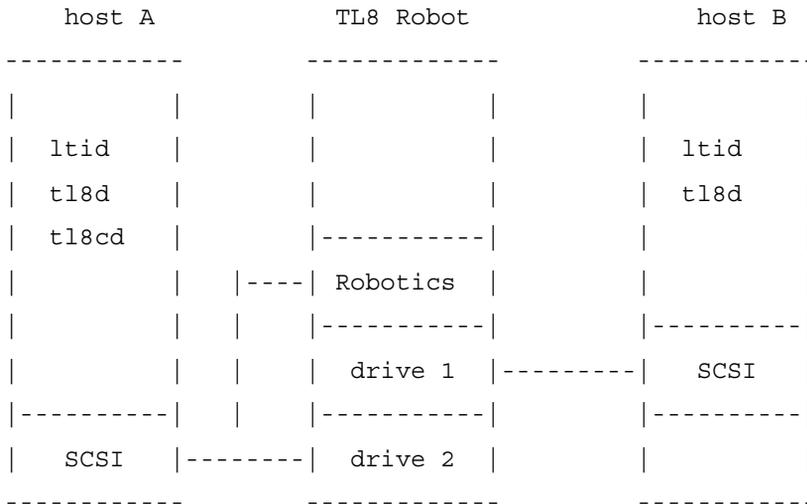
In the following diagram, the drives and the robotics are connected to a single host. `ltid` initiates `t18d`, which in turn initiates `t18cd`.





Note The following diagram applies only to NetBackup DataCenter.

In the following diagram, each host is connected to one drive in the robot and the robotics are connected to host A. ltid on each host initiates t18d. The t18d on host A also initiates t18cd, since that is where the robotic control is defined. Requests to mount tapes from host B go to t18d on host B, which sends the robotic command to t18cd on host A.



tldd

NAME

tldd, tldcd - Tape Library DLT (TLD) process and control process

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\volmgr\bin\tldd
```

```
install_path\volmgr\bin\tldcd
```

DESCRIPTION

tldd and tldcd interface with Media Manager to mount and unmount volumes in a Tape Library DLT (TLD) robot.

tldd directly interfaces with the NetBackup Device Manager service (ltid). tldd runs on each host with a drive connection and sends mount and unmount requests to the control process (tldcd). tldcd communicates directly with the robotics through a SCSI interface.

For NetBackup DataCenter, TLD robotic control software permits drives in the same robot to be configured on different hosts. tldcd may be running on a different host than tldd, depending on where the interface connection resides (see EXAMPLES). When the connection is established (that is, the path for robotics can be opened), tldd puts the TLD robot in the UP state and can mount and unmount volumes. If the robotics are inaccessible, tldd changes the robot to the DOWN state. In this state, tldd is still running and returns the robot to the UP state if tldcd is able to make a connection.

Note If drives are on different NetBackup DataCenter hosts, the robotic information must be entered in the Media Manager device configuration on all machines and the robot number must be the same on all machines.

tldd and tldcd are started when ltid is started and stopped when this service is stopped.

tldcd is on the host that has the robotic control and is automatically started by tldd on that host. tldcd is stopped when you stop the NetBackup Device Manager service.

The media ID and slot number information for volumes in the robot must be defined in the volume database before any volumes can be accessed through the NetBackup Device Manager service, tldd, and tldcd.

If a cleaning volume is used, it must be defined in the volume configuration. See tpclean for information on setting the frequency for automatic drive cleaning.



The drives are logically numbered 1 through n , where n is the number of drives in the robotic library. Use one or more of the following to determine the correct robot drive numbers:

- ◆ The Device Configuration wizard (if the robotic library and drives support serialization).
- ◆ The Robot Drive and Slot Layout appendix in the NetBackup Media Manager system administrator's guide.
- ◆ The robotic library vendor's documentation on drive indexing.
- ◆ The robotic test utility, or experiment by mounting media and watching the operator display.

The Internet service number for `tldcd` must be in

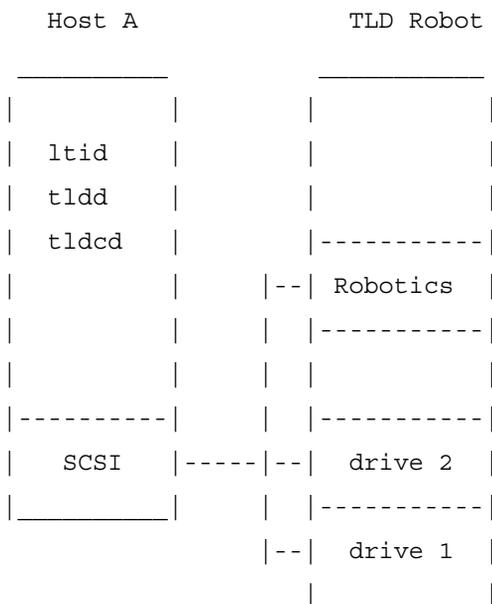
`%SystemRoot%\system32\drivers\etc\services`. To override the services file, create the file `install_path\Volmgr\database\ports\tldcd` with a single line that contains the service number for `tldcd`. The default service number is 13711.

ERRORS

Media Manager logs any Tape Library DLT and robotic errors to the Windows application event log. Log entries are also made when the state changes between UP and DOWN.

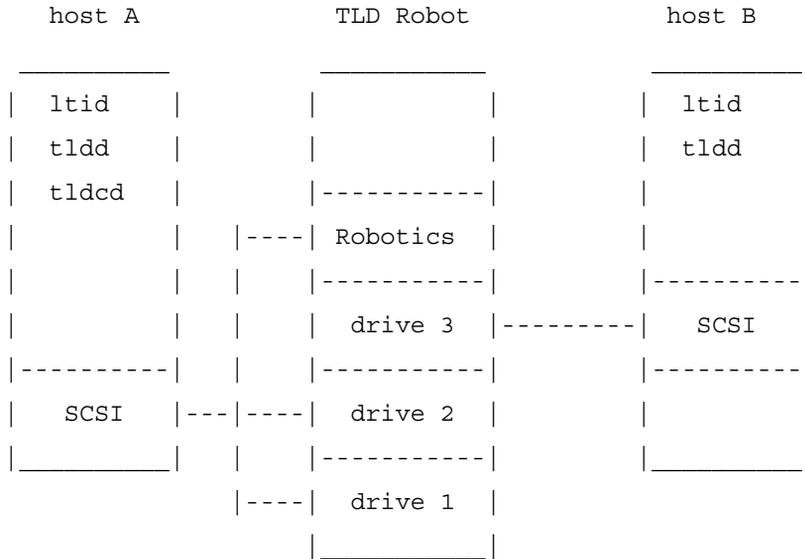
EXAMPLES

In the following diagram, the two drives and the robotics connect to Host A. `ltid` initiates `tldd`, which in turn initiates `tldcd`.



Note The following diagram applies only to NetBackup DataCenter.

In the following diagram, each host connects to one drive and the robotics connect to host A. `ltid` on each machine initiates `tldd`. The `tldd` on host A also initiates `tldcd`, since that is where the robotic control is defined. Requests to mount tapes from host B go to `tldd` on host B, which sends the robotic command to `tldcd` on host A.



tpclean

NAME

tpclean - manages tape drive cleaning

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\volmgr\bin\tpclean -L  
install_path\volmgr\bin\tpclean -C drive_name  
install_path\volmgr\bin\tpclean -M drive_name  
install_path\volmgr\bin\tpclean -F drive_name cleaning_frequency
```

DESCRIPTION

tpclean allows you to monitor Media Manager tape drive usage and optionally configure tape drives to be automatically cleaned (except drives in ACS, LMF, ODL, RSM, or TLH robots; or shared (SSO) drives).

Media Manager tracks the total amount of time that volumes have been mounted in the drives. You can use tpclean to specify a cleaning frequency (in hours) for a drive.

Drive cleaning occurs, if the following are true:

- ◆ The mount time exceeds the cleaning frequency.
- ◆ The drive is in a robot.
- ◆ The Media Manager volume configuration shows a cleaning tape in the robot.

The Comment field in the tpclean -L output will contain the message, NEEDS CLEANING, if the following are true. You can then manually clean the drive and reset the mount time using the -M option.

- ◆ The mount time exceeds the cleaning frequency.
- ◆ The drive is a standalone drive or does not have a cleaning tape defined.

For the -C, -M, and -F options, the NetBackup Device Manager service must be running. You must also have administrator privileges to execute this command.

See the reference topics appendix of the Media Manager system administrator's guide for information about the TapeAlert feature that is available with most tape drives, and other related drive cleaning topics.



OPTIONS

-C *drive_name*

Initiates the cleaning of a drive in a robot. The drive must be defined in a robot and a cleaning tape defined in the Media Manager volume configuration. The mount time is reset to zero. The drive name is the name that was assigned to the drive, when it was added.

-L

Prints cleaning statistics.

-M *drive_name*

Use this option to indicate that the drive has been manually cleaned. The mount time is reset to zero. The drive name is the name that was assigned to the drive, when it was added to the device configuration.

-F *drive_name cleaning_frequency*

Sets cleaning frequency for the specified drive to *cleaning_frequency* hours. The drive name is the name that was assigned to the drive when it was added. The value of *cleaning_frequency* must be between 0 and 10,000 hours.

For NetBackup DataCenter, frequency-based cleaning is not supported for shared drives.

EXAMPLES

The following example displays cleaning statistics. An asterisk next to the drive type means the device is defined as robotic.

```
#tpclean -L
```

Drive Name	Type	Mount Time	Frequency	Last Cleaned	Comment
*****	****	*****	*****	*****	*****
qsci_drv0	qscsi	0.0	0	N/A	
rob_A_drv1	8mm*	11.4	30	14:33 05/29/92	
4mm_drv5	4mm	5.6	10	13:01 06/02/92	
dlt_drv6	dlt	3.0	0	N/A	

The following example sets the cleaning frequency for the drive named `qsci_drv0` to 25 hours. The drive will be flagged as needing cleaning after 25 hours of mount time has occurred.

```
tpclean -F qsci_drv0 25
```

The following example resets the mount time for the drive named `rob_A_drv1` to zero. You would normally use this command after you had manually cleaned the drive.

```
tpclean -M rob_A_drv1
```



The following example initiates the cleaning of drive `rob_A_drv1`. This example assumes the drive is a robotic drive, with a cleaning tape defined. The mount time is reset to zero.

You can use the `-C` option to force the cleaning of a drive prior to reaching *cleaning_frequency*. Normally, robotic drives are cleaned automatically when their mount time exceeds the cleaning frequency.

```
tpclean -C rob_A_drv1
```

Note To use a cleaning tape, the Cleanings Remaining for that tape (as shown in the volume list of the Media node in the NetBackup Administration Console or from the `vmquery` command) must be greater than zero. This cleaning count refers to how many more times the cleaning tape can be used. You can change this count using the Media node or the `vmchange` command.

tpconfig

NAME

tpconfig - Tape configuration utility

SYNOPSIS

```

install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -d
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -l
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -dl
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -lsavdbhost
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -add -drive -type drvtype -path
    drivepath [-asciiiname asciidrivename] [-index drvindex]
    [-shared [yes|no]] [-cleanfreq hours] [-comment
    comment] [-drstatus [UP|DOWN]] [-robot robnum -robtype
    robtype] [-noverify] [-robdrnum robdrvnum |
    -VendorDrvName venddrvname | -ACS acsnum -LSM lsmnum
    -PANEL panelnum -DRIVE drivenum]
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -update -drive drvindex [-type
    drvtype] [-path drivepath] [-newasciiiname asciidrivename]
    [-shared [yes|no]] [-cleanfreq hours] [-comment
    comment] [-drstatus [UP|DOWN]] [-robot robnum -robtype
    robtype] [-noverify] [-robdrnum robdrvnum |
    -VendorDrvName venddrvname | -ACS acsnum -LSM lsmnum
    -PANEL panelnum -DRIVE drivenum]
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -delete -drive drvindex
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -multiple_delete -drive
    drvindex1:drvindex2: ... drvindexN
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -add -robot robnum -robtype robtype
    -robpath robpath [-vdbhost volume_database_host]
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -add -robot robnum -robtype robtype
    -port portnum -bus busnum -target targetnum -lun lun
    [-vdbhost volume_database_host]
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -add -robot robnum -robtype robtype
    -cntlhost cntlhost [-vdbhost volume_database_host]
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -update -robot robnum [-robtype
    robtype] [-robpath robpath | -port portnum -bus busnum
    -target targetnum -lun lun | -cntlhost cntlhost] [-vdbhost
    volume_database_host]

```



```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -delete -robot robnum
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -multiple_delete -robot
robnum1:robnum2: ... robnumN
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpconfig -savdbhost
standalone_volume_database_host
```

DESCRIPTION

The `tpconfig` command can be used to configure drives and robots for use with NetBackup. The default for *install_path* is `C:\Program Files\VERITAS`.

When your device configuration changes are complete, stop and restart the NetBackup Device Manager service.

OPTIONS

- l
Lists the current device configuration, without volume database host names.
- d
Lists the current configuration information, including volume database host names.

Note The following option is only applicable for NetBackup DataCenter.

- lsavdbhost
Lists the volume database host for standalone drives. This is the host where the NetBackup Volume Manager Service maintains the volume configuration for standalone drives.
- add
Adds a drive or a robot, depending on the accompanying options.
- update
Changes the configuration information for a drive or robot. For example, you can add a drive to a robot.
- delete
Deletes a drive or robot, depending on the accompanying options.
- multiple_delete
Deletes multiple drives or robots, depending on the accompanying options.

Note The following option is applicable only for NetBackup DataCenter.



-
- savdbhost *standalone_volume_database_host*
Sets the volume database host for standalone drives that attach to this host.
 - drive
Use this option with the -add option to specify that the action is for a drive.
 - drive *drvindex*
Use this option with the -update, -delete, or -multiple_delete options to specify the drive index and that the action is for a drive.
 - type *drvtype*
Specifies the type of drive that you are configuring.
This can be any of the following for NetBackup DataCenter:
4mm for 4mm tape drive, 8mm for 8mm tape drive, 8mm2 for 8mm tape drive 2, 8mm3 for 8mm tape drive 3, dlt for DLT tape drive, dlt2 for DLT tape drive 2, dlt3 for DLT tape drive 3, hcart for Half-inch cartridge drive, hcart2 for Half-inch cartridge drive 2, hcart3 for Half-inch cartridge drive 3, qscsi for Quarter-inch cartridge drive.
This can be any of the following for NetBackup BusinessServer:
4mm for 4mm tape drive, 8mm for 8mm tape drive, dlt for DLT tape drive, hcart for Half-inch cartridge drive, qscsi for Quarter-inch cartridge drive.
 - path *drivepath*
Specifies the Windows system name for the drive. For example, TAPE0.
 - comment *comment*
Adds a comment about the drive. This field is useful for storing SCSI inquiry data so you can easily check the drive type and firmware level.
 - index *drvindex*
A drive index is a unique number that is used to identify the drive. When you add a drive you are not required to supply a drive index, since the next available drive index is used by Media Manager. Each drive on a particular host must have a unique index number.
 - drstatus UP|DOWN
Sets the initial status of the drive to the Up or Down state. You can also perform this action with options in the Device Management window.
 - cleanfreq *hours*

Note Not used with shared drives.



Specifies the number of hours between drive cleanings. When you add a drive, NetBackup starts recording the amount of time that volumes are mounted in that drive.

If the drive is in a robot and a cleaning volume is defined in the robot, cleaning occurs when the accumulated mount time exceeds the time that you specify for cleaning frequency. NetBackup resets the mount time when the drive is cleaned.

If the drive is standalone or if a cleaning tape is not defined, the message **NEEDS CLEANING** appears in the comment field of the `tpclean -L` output. To clean the drive, use the `tpclean` command.

`-robot` *robnum*

A unique number that identifies the robot to NetBackup. You assign the robot number when you add the robot using the `add` option.

For NetBackup DataCenter, robot numbers must be unique for all robots that share the same volume database host (and therefore use the same volume database). This applies regardless of the robot type or the host that controls them. For example, if you have two TSD robots controlled by different hosts, but they have the same volume database host, then the robot numbers must be different.

`-robtype` *robtype*

Specifies the type of robot that you are configuring and can be any of the types supported by NetBackup on Windows servers.

The type of robot can be any of the following for NetBackup DataCenter:

`acs` for Automated Cartridge System, `rsm` for Removable Storage Manager (Windows 2000 only), `t14` for Tape Library 4mm, `t18` for Tape Library 8mm, `t1d` for Tape Library DLT, `t1h` for Tape Library Half-inch, `t1m` for Tape Library Multimedia, `ts8` for Tape Stacker 8mm, `tsd` for Tape Stacker DLT.

The type of robot can be any of the following for NetBackup BusinessServer:

`rsm` for Removable Storage Manager (Windows 2000 only), `t14` for Tape Library 4mm, `t18` for Tape Library 8mm, `t1d` for Tape Library DLT, `ts8` for Tape Stacker 8mm, `tsd` for Tape Stacker DLT.

`-noverify`

If this option is specified, drive paths are not verified. Normally, `tpconfig` verifies that the no rewind on close drive path has the correct minor number bits relating to no rewind, variable, Berkeley-style, and so on. This option is normally not required, but may be helpful if using non-standard platform device files. If this option is specified, caution should be taken in making sure the device files are correct.



-robdrnum *robdrnum*

Specifies the physical location (within the robot) of the drive. If you assign the wrong number, NetBackup does not detect it, but an error eventually occurs because the robotic control attempts to mount media on the wrong drive.

You can usually determine the physical location by checking the connectors to the drives or the vendor documentation.

The Robot Slot and Layout appendix of the Media Manager system administrator's guide shows drive layouts for many of the robots that NetBackup supports.

Note The following four ACS options are not supported in NetBackup BusinessServer.

-ACS *acsnum*

-LSM *lsmnum*

-PANEL *panelnum*

-DRIVE *drivenum*

These options specify the configuration for ACS (Automated Cartridge System) robots.

acsnum specifies the number for the robotic library as configured on the ACS library software host.

lsmnum specifies the Library Storage Module that has this drive.

panelnum specifies the robot panel where this drive is located.

drivenum specifies the number of this drive.

Note The following two options are not supported in NetBackup BusinessServer.

-VendorDrvName *venddrvname*

Specifies the IBM device name for a TLH robotic drive or the DAS drive name for a TLM robotic drive.

-shared *yes|no*

Specify *yes*, if the drive you are adding or updating will be shared among hosts.

-asciiName *asciidrivename*

Specifies a name for the drive. This name identifies the drive to Media Manager. If you do not specify a drive name, Media Manager generates a name.

For NetBackup DataCenter, if you are adding or updating shared drives, make this name as descriptive as possible.



`-newasciiname asciidrivename`
Specifies a new name for the drive.

Note For a SCSI-controlled robot on NetBackup DataCenter, specify the `-port`, `-bus`, `-target`, and `-lun` options if the robotic control is on the local Windows host and there is no changer name associated with the robotic library.
If the robot control is on the local Windows 2000 host and supported by Windows 2000, configure the robot using `-robpath pathname` (using the changer name as *pathname*).
If the robotic control is on a remote host, use the `-cntlhost` option.

Note For NetBackup BusinessServer if a TLD or TL8 robot is used on and supported by Windows 2000, configure it using `-robpath`.

`-port portnum`
Specifies the SCSI port number to which the robot connects. You can find this information in the registry.

`-bus busnum`
Specifies the SCSI bus number to which the robot connects.

`-target targetnum`
Specifies the target number (or SCSI ID) to which the robot connects.

`-lun lun`
Specifies the logical unit number.

Note The following option is only applicable for NetBackup DataCenter.

`-cntlhost cntlhost`
For a robot whose robotic control is on another host, this option specifies the host that controls the robotic library.
This option applies only to TL8, TLD, and TLH robots that can have the robotic control on another host, and to ACS and TLM robots.
For an ACS robot, specify the host name where the ACS library software is installed.
For a TLM robot, specify the host name where the DAS software is installed.

`-robpath robpath`
If the robot that you are adding or updating has a changer name associated with it, and is on UNIX host or Windows 2000 host, use this option.

Note The following option is only applicable for NetBackup DataCenter.



`-vdbhost` *volume_database_host*

For a robot, this specifies the volume database host. This is the host that will have the information about the media in the robot.

EXAMPLES

Note In the following examples, the command that is entered is shown on multiple lines because of page limitations. The actual command is entered on one line.

EXAMPLE 1: ROBOTIC CONTROL ON LOCAL WINDOWS SERVER

The following example adds a robot that connects directly to a Windows host, and also adds drives to that robot. For NetBackup BusinessServer there is only one host (the master), so the `-vdbhost` option is not needed.

1. Add the robot using the following command:

```
tpconfig -add -robot 7 -robtype tld -port 0 -bus 0 -target 2 lun
0 -vdbhost walleye
```

2. If there are drives in the robot that have not been configured, add them.

The following command configures the drive with the system name of Tape0 under control of the robot configured in step 1 (Tape0 has been attached and recognized by the server.)

```
tpconfig -add -drive -type dlt -path Tape0 -comment "DEC
DLT2000 8414" -index 0 -drstatus up -robot 7 -robtype tld
-robdrnum 1 -asciiname DLT2000_D1
```

The command in this example uses the comment field. This field is useful for storing the drive's SCSI inquiry data so that drive type and firmware level can be easily checked.

3. If the robot contains drives that are currently configured as standalone drives, update the drive configuration to place them under robotic control.

The following commands update the configuration for drives 1 and 2:

```
tpconfig -update -drive 1 -type dlt -robot 7 -robtype tld
-robdrnum 1

tpconfig -update -drive 2 -type dlt -robot 7 -robtype tld
-robdrnum 2
```

Note It is important that you assign the correct robot drive number to the drives. If robot drive numbers are incorrect, tape mounts or backups may fail.



EXAMPLE 2: ROBOTIC CONTROL ON REMOTE HOST

Note The following example applies only to NetBackup DataCenter.

This example adds a robot that connects to another host. It assumes that one or more tape drives that are in the robot, connect to the Windows host where you are currently managing devices.

1. Add the robot by executing the following command:

```
tpconfig -add -robot 9 -robtype tld -cntlhost perch -vdbhost perch
```

Ensure that the robot number matches the one on the control host.

2. If the robot contains drives that are currently configured as standalone, update the drive configuration to place them under robotic control.

The following commands update the configuration for drives 1 and 2:

```
tpconfig -update -drive 1 -type dlt -robot 9 -robtype tld -robdrnum 1
```

```
tpconfig -update -drive 2 -type dlt -robot 9 -robtype tld -robdrnum 2
```

Note It is important that drives are assigned the correct robot drive number. If robot drive numbers are incorrect, tape mounts or backups may fail.

3. If there are drives in the robot that have not been configured, add them now.

The following command configures the drive with the system name of Tape0 under control of the robot configured in step 1. (Tape0 has been attached and recognized by the Windows server.)

```
tpconfig -add -drive -type dlt -name Tape0 -comment "DEC DLT2000 8414" -index 3 -drstatus up -robot 9 -robtype tld -robdrnum 3 -asciiname DLT2000_D3
```

EXAMPLE 3: CONFIGURING NEW STANDALONE DRIVES

The following is an example of adding a standalone drive, after the drive is installed:

```
tpconfig -add -drive -type dlt -name Tape0 -comment "DEC DLT2000 8414" -index 6 -asciiname DLT2000_standalone
```

tpreq

NAME

tpreq - request a tape volume for mounting and associate a file name with the assigned drive

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\volmgr\bin\tpreq -m media_id [-a accessmode] [-d density]
[-p poolname] [-f] filename
```

DESCRIPTION

This command initiates a mount request for a tape volume on a removable media device. The information that you specify with this command identifies and registers the specified file as a logical identifier for the mount request with Media Manager and manages access to the volume.

Media Manager automatically mounts the media if it is in a robotic drive. Otherwise, an operator mount request appears in the Device Monitor window. tpreq will not complete normally in the case of a mount request for a robotic drive, if operator intervention is required. These requests also appear in the Device Monitor window.

When the operation is complete, use the tpmount command to remove the file name from the directory in which the file was created.

OPTIONS

- m *media_id*
Specifies the media ID of the volume to be mounted. You can enter the ID in upper or lowercase; Media Manager converts it to uppercase.
- a *accessmode*
Specifies the access mode of the volume. Valid access modes are w and r. If the access mode is w (write), the media must be mounted with write enabled. The default is r (read), which means the media may be write protected.
- d *density*
Specifies the density of the drive. This option determines the type of drive on which the tape volume is mounted. The default density is dlt.
Valid densities for NetBackup DataCenter follow:
4mm for 4-mm cartridge, 8mm for 8-mm cartridge, 8mm2 for 8-mm cartridge 2, 8mm3 for 8-mm cartridge 3, dlt for DLT cartridge, dlt2 for DLT cartridge 2, dlt3 for DLT cartridge 3, heart for 1/2 Inch cartridge, heart2 for 1/2 Inch cartridge 2, heart3 for 1/2 Inch cartridge 3, qscsi for 1/4-inch cartridge.



For NetBackup DataCenter, the half-inch cartridge densities (hcart, hcart2, and hcart3) can be used to distinguish between any supported half-inch drive types. However, tape requests can only be assigned to drives of the associated media type. For example, a tape request with density hcart2 specifying a media ID with media type HCART2 will be assigned to an hcart2 drive. Likewise, a tape request with density hcart specifying an media ID with media type HCART will be assigned to an hcart drive. The same rules apply to the DLT densities (dlt, dlt2, and dlt3) and the 8MM densities (8mm, 8mm2, and 8mm3).

Valid densities for NetBackup BusinessServer follow:

4mm for 4-mm cartridge, 8mm for 8-mm cartridge, dlt for DLT cartridge, hcart for 1/2 Inch cartridge, qscsi for 1/4-inch cartridge.

The mount request must be performed on a drive type that satisfies the density.

-p *poolname*

Specifies the volume pool where the volume resides. *poolname* is case sensitive. The default is None.

-f *filename*

Specifies the file to be associated with the volume.

The file name can be a single name or a complete path. If you specify only a file name, the file is created in the current working directory. If you specify a path, the file is created in the directory named in the path. *filename* cannot be an existing file.

If the tpreq command is successful, Media Manager creates a file with the name that you specified. This file contains the name of the tape device where the media is mounted. Do not delete this file. Use the tpremount command to remove it.

Specifying -f before *filename* is optional.

tpunmount

NAME

tpunmount - removes a tape volume from a drive and tape file from the directory

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\tpunmount [-f] filename [-force]
```

DESCRIPTION

tpunmount removes a tape file from the directory and physically removes the tape volume from the drive (if the media was mounted).

Standalone drives are *not* unloaded when the DO_NOT_EJECT_STANDALONE option is specified in the `vm.conf` file (and the `-force` option is *not* specified).

The tape file and the device must be closed before you can use tpunmount.

OPTIONS

`-f filename`

Specifies the file associated with the media. You must specify a file name. Specifying `-f` before *filename* is optional.

`-force`

Ejects the volume from a standalone drive, even if DO_NOT_EJECT_STANDALONE was specified in the `vm.conf` file.

EXAMPLE

The following command unmounts the tape volume associated with file `tape1` and removes the file from the current directory:

```
tpunmount tape1
```



ts8d

NAME

ts8d - Tape Stacker 8MM (TS8) process

SYNOPSIS

install_path\Volmgr\bin\ts8d

DESCRIPTION

ts8d interfaces with Media Manager to mount and unmount tapes in a Tape Stacker 8MM robot. It is initiated by the NetBackup Device Manager service (ltid), if the Media Manager device configuration shows drives in a Tape Stacker 8MM. Stopping this service stops ts8d.

ts8d communicates directly with the robotics through a SCSI interface. When the connection is established (the path for robotics can be opened), ts8d puts the TS8 robot in the UP state and can mount and unmount tapes. If the robotics are inaccessible, ts8d changes the robot to the DOWN state. In this state, ts8d is still running and returns the robot to the UP state if it is able to make a connection.

The media ID and slot number information for 8mm tapes in a robot must be defined in the volume database before any tapes can be accessed through the NetBackup Device Manager service and ts8d.

If a cleaning volume is used, it must be defined in the volume configuration. See tpclean for information on setting the frequency for automatic drive cleaning.

The Internet service number for ts8d must be in %SystemRoot%\system32\drivers\etc\services. To override the services file, create the file *install_path*\Volmgr\database\ports\ts8d with a single line that contains the service number for ts8d. The default service number is 13709.

ERRORS

Media Manager logs any Tape Stacker 8MM and robotic errors to the Windows application event log. Log entries are also made when the state changes between UP and DOWN.



tsdd

NAME

tsdd - Tape Stacker DLT (TSD) process

SYNOPSIS

install_path\Volmgr\bin\tsdd

DESCRIPTION

tsdd interfaces with Media Manager to mount and unmount tapes in Tape Stacker DLT (TSD) robots. It is initiated by the NetBackup Device Manager service (`ltid`), if the Media Manager device configuration shows drives in the Tape Stacker DLT (TSD). Stopping this service stops tsdd.

tsdd communicates directly with the robotics using a SCSI interface. When the connection is established (the path for robotics can be opened), tsdd puts the TSD robot in the UP state and can mount and unmount tapes. If the robotics are inaccessible, tsdd changes the robot to the DOWN state. In this state, tsdd is still running and returns the robot to the UP state if it is able to make a connection.

The media ID and slot number information for DLT tapes in a robot must be defined in the volume database before any tapes can be accessed through the NetBackup Device Manager service and tsdd.

If a cleaning volume is used, it must be defined in the volume configuration. See `tpclean` for information on setting the frequency for automatic drive cleaning.

The Internet service number for tsdd must be in `%SystemRoot%\system32\drivers\etc\services`. To override the services file, create the file *install_path*\Volmgr\database\ports\tsdd with a single line that contains the service number for tsdd. The default service number is 13714.

ERRORS

Media Manager logs any Tape Stacker DLT robot and robotic errors to the Windows application event log. Log entries are also made when the state changes between UP and DOWN.



vmadd

NAME

vmadd - Add volumes to the volume database

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmadd -m media_id -mt media_type [-h  
volume_database_host] [-verbose] [-b barcode] [-rt  
robot_type] [-rn robot_number] [-rh robot_host] [-rc1  
rob_slot] [-rc2 rob_side] [-p pool_number] [-mm max_mounts  
| -n cleanings] [-op optical_partner] [-d "media_description"]
```

DESCRIPTION

Add volumes to the Media Manager volume database.

OPTIONS

-m media_id

Specifies the media ID of the volume to add. The media ID can be a maximum of 6 ASCII characters.

For NetBackup DataCenter if you are adding an optical disk, specify the media ID for the A side of the optical platter. Media IDs for an API robot type (ACS, TLH, TLM, LMF, or RSM) must always match the barcodes.

For NetBackup BusinessServer, media IDs for an RSM robot must always match the barcodes.

-mt media_type

Specifies the media type of the volume to add.

Valid media types for NetBackup DataCenter are: 4mm, 8mm, 8mm2, 8mm3, dlt, dlt2, dlt3, dtf, hcart, hcart2, hcart3, odiskwm, odiskwo, qcart, 4mm_clean, 8mm_clean, 8mm2_clean, 8mm3_clean, dlt_clean, dlt2_clean, dlt3_clean, dtf_clean, hcart_clean, hcart2_clean, hcart3_clean.

Valid media types for NetBackup BusinessServer are: 4mm, 8mm, dlt, hcart, qcart, 4mm_clean, 8mm_clean, dlt_clean, hcart_clean.

Note The following option is only applicable for NetBackup DataCenter.

-h volume_database_host

Name of the host with the volume database where the volume will be added. You should ensure that the host specified matches the volume database host name associated with the robot or set of standalone drives, as indicated in the device configuration. If no host is specified, the host where you execute the command is assumed.



-
- verbose
Selects verbose mode.
 - b *barcode*
Specifies the barcode attached to the volume.
 - rt *robot_type*
Specifies the robot type of the robot where the volume is located.
Valid robot types for NetBackup DataCenter are: none, acs, lmf, odl, rsm, tl4, tl8, tld, tlh, tlm, ts8, tsd, tsh.
Valid robot types for NetBackup BusinessServer are: none, rsm, tl4, tl8, tld, ts8, tsd.
 - rn *robot_number*
Unique, logical identification number for the robot where the volume is located.
 - rh *robot_host*
Name of the host which controls the robot, where the volume is located.
 - rc1 *rob_slot*
Robot coordinate 1 is the slot number in the robot where the volume is located.
For NetBackup DataCenter, do not enter slot information for Media Manager API robot types. The robot software tracks the slot locations for these robots.
For NetBackup BusinessServer, do not enter slot information for Media Manager RSM robot types. The robot software tracks the slot locations for these robots.

Note The following option is only applicable for NetBackup DataCenter.

- rc2 *rob_side*
Robot coordinate 2 is the platter side for optical disks (A or B).
- p *pool_number*
Index of the volume pool which will contain this volume. You can use `vmppool -listall` to determine the index for a given pool name.
- mm *max_mounts*
Maximum number of mounts allowed for this volume. Only used for non-cleaning media. When this limit is exceeded, the volume can be mounted for read operations only.
- n *cleanings*
Number of cleanings remaining for this volume. Only used for cleaning media.



Note The following option is only applicable for NetBackup DataCenter.

-op *optical_partner*

If this is an optical disk, specify the media ID of the opposite side of the optical platter.

-d "*media_description*"

Media description of the volume. The double quote marks are required if the description contains any spaces.

EXAMPLES

The following command adds volume AJU244 in the NetBackup volume pool to the volume database on the host named llama. For NetBackup BusinessServer there is only one host (the master), so the -h option is not needed.

The volume, with a barcode of AJU244, is in slot 2 of TLD robot 1. For write operations, the volume may be mounted a maximum of 1000 times.

Note This command is usually entered on one line.

```
vmadd -m AJU244 -mt dlt -h llama -b AJU244 -rt tld -rn 1 -rh llama  
-rc1 2 -p 1 -mm 1000 -d "vmadd example"
```

NOTES

Only limited validation of the option parameters is done.

SEE ALSO

vmchange, vmdelete, vmpool, vmquery

vmchange

NAME

vmchange - change media information in the Media Manager volume database

SYNOPSIS

Change volume group residence

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -vg_res
    -rt robot_type -rn robot_number -rh robot_host -v volume_group
```

Change volume residence

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -res -m
    media_id -mt media_type -rt robot_type -rn robot_number -rh
    robot_host -v volume_group -rc1 rob_slot [-rc2 rob_side]
```

Change volume expiration date

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -exp
    mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss -m media_id
```

Change the barcode for a volume

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -barcode
    barcode -m media_id [-rt robot_type]
```

Change the media description for a volume

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -d
    "media_description" -m media_id
```

Associate this volume with a different pool

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -p
    pool_number -m media_id
```

Change a volume's maximum mount count

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -maxmounts
    max_mounts -m media_id
```

Change a volume's number of mounts count or cleanings

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -n
    num_mounts/cleanings -m media_id
```

Change a volume's media type

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -new_mt
    media_type -m media_id
```



Change a volume's robot type

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -new_rt  
robot_type -m media_id -rn robot_number
```

Change a volume's group

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -new_v  
volume_group [-m media_id | -b barcode -mt media_type -rt  
robot_type]
```

Change a volume's vault name

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -vltname  
vault_name -m media_id
```

Change the date the volume was sent to the vault

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -vltsent  
mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss -m media_id
```

Change the date when the volume returns from the vault

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -vltreturn  
mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss -m media_id
```

Change a volume's vault slot number

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host] -vltslot  
vault_slot -m media_id
```

Change the volume's vault session id

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange [-h volume_database_host]  
-vltsession vault_session_id -m media_id
```

Move (eject) volumes from an ACS, TLH, or TLM robot to standalone

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange -api_eject -map map_id -w [-h  
volume_database_host] -res -ml media_id1:media_id2: ...  
media_idn -rt robot_type -rn robot_number -rh robot_host [-v  
volume_group]
```

Move (eject) multiple volumes from a TL8 or TLD robot to standalone

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange -multi_eject -w [-h  
volume_database_host] -res -ml media_id1:media_id2: ...  
media_idn -rt robot_type -verbose -rn robot_number -rh  
robot_host
```

Move (inject) multiple volumes into a TL8 or TLD robot

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange -multi_inject -w -res -rt  
robot_type -verbose -rn robot_number -rh robot_host
```



Get robot information for a TL8 or TLD robot type

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmchange -res -robot_info -verbose -rn
  robot_number -rt robot_type -rh robot_host
```

DESCRIPTION

Change volume information in the Media Manager volume database.

OPTIONS

Note The following option is only applicable for NetBackup DataCenter.

- h *volume_database_host*
Name of the host that has the volume database which keeps information about the media in robots and standalone drives. If no host is specified, the host where you execute the command is assumed.
- vg_res
Change volume group residence.
- rt *robot_type*
Specifies the robot type of the robot where the volume is located.
Valid robot types for NetBackup DataCenter are: none, acs, lmf, odl, rsm, tl4, tl8, tld, tlh, tlm, ts8, tsd, tsh.
Valid robot types for NetBackup BusinessServer are: none, rsm, tl4, tl8, tld, ts8, tsd.
- rn *robot_number*
Unique, logical identification number for the robot where the volume is located.
- rh *robot_host*
Name of the host which controls the robot, where the volume is located.
- v *volume_group*
A volume group is a logical grouping that identifies a set of volumes that reside at the same physical location.
- res
Change the volume's residence.
- m *media_id*
Specifies the media ID of the volume to change.
- mt *media_type*
Specifies the media type of the volume to change.



Valid media types for NetBackup DataCenter are: 4mm, 8mm, 8mm2, 8mm3, dlt, dlt2, dlt3, dtf, hcart, hcart2, hcart3, odiskw, odiskwo, qcart, 4mm_clean, 8mm_clean, 8mm2_clean, 8mm3_clean, dlt_clean, dlt2_clean, dlt3_clean, dtf_clean, hcart_clean, hcart2_clean, hcart3_clean.

Valid media types for NetBackup BusinessServer are: 4mm, 8mm, dlt, hcart, qcart, 4mm_clean, 8mm_clean, dlt_clean, hcart_clean.

-rc1 *rob_slot*

Robot coordinate 1 is the slot number in the robot where the volume is located.

For NetBackup DataCenter, do not enter slot information for API robot types. The robot software tracks the slot locations for these robots.

For NetBackup BusinessServer, do not enter slot information for RSM robot types. The robot software tracks the slot locations for these robots.

Note The following option is only applicable for NetBackup DataCenter.

-rc2 *rob_side*

Robot coordinate 2 is the platter side for optical disks (A or B).

-exp *mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss*

Expiration date for this volume.

-barcode *barcode*

Specifies the barcode attached to the volume.

-d "*media_description*"

Media description for the volume. The double quote marks are required if the description contains any spaces.

-p *pool_number*

Index of the volume pool which will contain this volume. You can get the pool index using `vmpool -listall`.

-maxmounts *max_mounts*

Maximum number of mounts allowed for this volume. Only used for non-cleaning media.

-n *num_mounts/cleanings*

For non-cleaning media, *num_mounts* is the number of times this volume has been mounted.

For cleaning media, *cleanings* is the number of cleanings left for this cleaning tape.

-new_mt *media_type*

Specifies the media type of the volume to change. See the `-mt` option for a list of media types.



-
- new_rt *robot_type*
Specifies the robot type. See the -rt option for a list of robot types.
 - new_v *volume_group*
A volume group is a logical grouping that identifies a set of volumes that reside at the same physical location.
 - b *barcode*
Specifies the barcode attached to the volume.
 - vltname *vault_name*
Specifies the name of the logical vault configured for the robot that ejected the volume.
 - vltsent *mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss*
Specifies the date the volume was sent offsite.
 - vltreturn *mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss*
Specifies the date the volume was requested for return from the vault vendor. For catalog backup volumes, this is the date that the volume will be requested for return from the vault vendor.
 - vltslot *vault_slot*
Specifies the vault vendor's slot number for the slot that this volume occupies.
 - vltsession *vault_session_id*
Specifies the id of the vault session that ejected this media.
 - api_eject
Eject ACS, TLH, or TLM volumes from the specified robot.
 - map *map_id*
Specifies the media access port. For ACS robot types this is the CAP ID (which has the format: ACS, LSM, CAP).
 - w
Wait flag. This flag must be used with the eject, multiple eject, and multiple inject commands.
 - verbose
Selects verbose mode.
 - ml *media_id1:media_id2: ... media_idn*
Specifies a list of media to be ejected from the robot.
 - robot_info
Used to retrieve information about a robotic library. This option is valid only for TLD and TL8 robot types
 - multi_eject
Use the robotic library's media access port to eject multiple volumes.



`-multi_inject`

Use the robotic library's media access port to inject multiple volumes.

EXAMPLES

The following command changes the expiration date of volume AJS100:

```
vmchange -exp 12/31/99 23:59:59 -m AJS100
```

The following command changes the pool (which contains volume AJS999) to pool 1 (which is the NetBackup pool):

```
vmchange -h dill -p 1 -m AJS999
```

The following command ejects volumes abc123 and abc124 from ACS robot number 700. The residences for these two volumes are changed to standalone.

```
vmchange -res -api_eject -w -ml abc123:abc124 -rt acs -rn 700 -rh  
verbena -map 0,0,0
```

CAUTIONS

Only limited validation of the option parameters is done.

Some robotic libraries implement different functionality for their media access ports. For example, some libraries have front-panel inject and eject features that conflict with NetBackup's use of the media access port (for example, Spectra Logic Bullfrog). Other libraries require front-panel interaction when using the media access port (for example, Spectra Logic Gator).

Make sure you read the operator manual for your robotic library to gain an understanding of its media access port functionality. Libraries such as the ones noted may not be fully compatible with NetBackup's inject and eject features if not properly handled. Other libraries may not be compatible at all.

SEE ALSO

`vmadd`, `vmdelete`, `vmpool`, `vmquery`

vmcheckxxx

NAME

vmcheckxxx - Report the media contents of a robotic library

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmcheckxxx -rt robot_type -rn robot_number [-rh
robot_host] [-h volume_database_host] [[-if
inventory_filter_value] [-if inventory_filter_value] ...] [-full]
[-list]
```

DESCRIPTION

Report the media contents of a robotic library and optionally compare its contents with the volume configuration.

If no options are specified, the media contents of the robot and the volume configuration are listed along with a list of any mismatches detected.

OPTIONS

- rt *robot_type*
Specifies the robot type of the robot to inventory.
Valid robot types for NetBackup DataCenter are: none, acs, lmf, odl, rsm, tl4, tl8, tld, tlh, tlm, ts8, tsd, tsh.
Valid robot types for NetBackup BusinessServer are: none, rsm, tl4, tl8, tld, ts8, tsd.
- rn *robot_number*
Unique, logical identification number of the robot to inventory.
- rh *robot_host*
Name of the host which controls the robot. If no host is specified, the host where you execute this command is assumed.

Note The following two options are only applicable for NetBackup DataCenter.

- h *volume_database_host*
Name of the host that has the volume database which contains information about the volumes in a robot. If no host is specified, the host where you execute this command is assumed.
- if *inventory_filter_value*
Specifies inventory filter values. Multiple -if options may be specified. The inventory filter value is an ACS scratch pool ID, a TLH volume category, or an LMF barcode prefix.



The `-if` and `-full` options cannot be specified together.

`-full`

Specifies full inventory. The `-full` and `-if` options cannot be specified together.

`-list`

Lists the robot contents.

EXAMPLES

The following command lists the media contents of TLD robot 1 and the volume configuration for that robot on the host named niagra, along with a list of any mismatches that are detected:

```
vmcheckxxx -rt tld -rn 1 -rh niagra -h niagra
```

The following command lists the contents of TLH robot 2 that is connected to the host where the `vmcheckxxx` command was executed:

```
vmcheckxxx -rt tlh -rn 2 -list
```

NOTES

Only limited validation of the option parameters is done.

SEE ALSO

`vmupdate`

vmdelete

NAME

vmdelete - Delete volumes from the volume database

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\volmgr\bin\vmdelete [-h volume_database_host] [-m  
media_id | -v volume_group]
```

DESCRIPTION

Delete volumes from the volume database.

OPTIONS

Note The following option is applicable only for NetBackup DataCenter.

- h *volume_database_host*
Name of the host that has the volume database which contains information about the volumes in a robot. If no host is specified, the host where you execute the command is assumed.
- m *media_id*
Specifies the media id of the volume to delete from the volume database.
- v *volume_group*
Specifies the volume group to delete. All volumes in this group are deleted from the volume database.

EXAMPLES

The following command deletes a single volume:

```
vmdelete -m AJS144
```

The following command deletes all volumes with the volume group name of DELETE_ME:

```
vmdelete -v DELETE_ME
```

NOTES

Only limited validation of the option parameters is done.

SEE ALSO

vmadd, vmchange, vmquery



vmopr cmd

NAME

vmopr cmd - perform operator functions on drives

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmopr cmd [-h device_host] -down | -up |
  -upopr | -reset drive_index | -downbyname | -upbyname |
  -upoprbyname | -resetbyname drive_name |
  -crawlreleasebyname drive_name | -comment drive_index
  ["comment"] | -commentbyname drive_name ["comment"] |
  -assign drive_index mount_request_id | -assignbyname
  drive_name mount_request_id | -deny | -resubmit
  mount_request_id | -d [pr | ds | ad] | -help
```

DESCRIPTION

Perform operator functions on drives. The -h option is not required, but you must choose one and only one of the other options listed below.

OPTIONS

-h *device_host*

Name of the device host where the drives are attached and configured. If no host option is specified, the device host where you execute the command is assumed.

For NetBackup BusinessServer, the device host is the host where Media Manager is installed.

-down | -up | -upopr | -reset *drive_index*

-down Sets the drive to the DOWN state, if it is not assigned.

-up Sets the drive to UP in Automatic Volume Recognition (AVR) mode. This is the normal mode for all drives.

-upopr Sets the drive to UP in Operator (OPR) mode. This mode is normally used only for security reasons. For a drive in a robot, OPR and AVR are treated identically while the robot process is up.

-reset Resets the specified drive, terminating the drive assignment and taking control away from the assigned user.

Caution Do not reset an assigned drive unless directed by site policy or the system administrator. Terminating an active job can destroy user data.



-
- downbyname | -upbyname | -upoprbyname | -resetbyname *drive_name*
These options are similar to -down, -up, -upopr, and -reset respectively, except the drive is specified by the drive name instead of drive index.
 - comment *drive_index* ["*comment*"]
Add a comment for the drive. The quotes are required if your comment contains any spaces. If you do not specify *comment*, any existing comments for the drive are deleted.
 - commentbyname *drive_name* ["*comment*"]
This option is similar to the -comment option, except the drive is specified by the drive name instead of drive index.
 - assign *drive_index mount_request_id*
Assign a drive to a mount request.
 - assignbyname *drive_name mount_request_id*
This option is similar to the -assign option, except the drive is specified by the drive name instead of drive index.
 - deny | -resubmit *mount_request_id*
-deny Denying a mount request returns an error message to the user.
-resubmit Resubmit a mount request. If a pending action message involves a robot, you must correct the problem and resubmit the request that caused the message.
 - d [pr | ds | ad]
If none of the following optional display parameters are specified, all information is displayed.
pr Display pending requests.
ds Display the status of drives under control of Media Manager.
ad Display additional status of drives under control of Media Manager.
 - help
Display the usage statement for this command.
 - crawlreleasebyname *drive_name*
This option forces all hosts (that are registered to use the drive) to issue a SCSI release command to the drive. Issue this option on the host that is the SSO device allocator (DA host) or use the -h option to specify the DA host.

Caution Use this option after a PEND status has been seen in Device Monitor. Do not use this option during backups.



EXAMPLES

The following command sets the drive, with a drive index of 0, to UP mode:

```
vmopr cmd -up 0
```

The following command displays the drive status of all drives:

```
vmopr cmd -d ds
```

The following command displays pending requests and the drive status of all drives on the device host named crab:

```
vmopr cmd -h crab
```

NOTES

Only limited validation of the option parameters is done.

SEE ALSO

tpconfig(1M)

vmpool

NAME

vmpool - Manage volume pools

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmpool [-h volume_database_host] -listall
  [-b] | -listscratch | -add pool_name "description" host uid gid |
  -change pool_name "description" host uid gid | -delete
  pool_name | -set_scratch pool_name | -unset_scratch
  pool_name
```

DESCRIPTION

Use this command to add, change, delete, or list volume pools.

The `-h` option is not required, but you must choose one and only one of the other seven options (for example, `-listscratch`).

OPTIONS

Note The following option is only applicable for NetBackup DataCenter.

- `-h volume_database_host`
Name of the host that has the volume database which keeps information about the media in a robot. If no host is specified, the host where you execute the command is assumed.
- `-listall [-b]`
List information about all volume pools. You can use the `-b` option to specify a brief format for volume pool information.
- `-listscratch`
List all configured scratch pools.
- `-add pool_name "description" host uid gid`
Add a new volume pool.
- `-change pool_name "description" host uid gid`
Change an existing volume pool.
- `-delete pool_name`
Delete a volume pool.
- `"description"`
Description of the volume pool. The double quote marks are required if the description contains any spaces.



host

Name of the host that will be permitted to request and use volumes in this volume pool.

For NetBackup DataCenter to permit only a specific host to access the volume pool, enter the name of that host. To permit any host to access the volume pool, enter ANYHOST. Using the value ANYHOST is recommended.

For NetBackup BusinessServer, you can only specify the value ANYHOST.

uid

Enter the default value, -1 (ANY), to permit any user id to access the pool.

gid

Enter the default value, -2 (NONE), to permit only the user id specified by *uid* to request or access the volume pool.

-set_scratch pool_name

If *pool_name* is a previously defined volume pool, *pool_name* will become the scratch pool and its description will not be changed. The NetBackup, DataStore, and None volume pools cannot be changed to scratch pools.

If *pool_name* is a new volume pool, a new pool will be created with "Scratch Pool" as the description.

Only one scratch pool at a time can be defined.

-unset_scratch pool_name

Undefines *pool_name* as the scratch pool and defines it as a regular volume pool. The pool can be deleted using `vmpool -delete pool_name`.

EXAMPLES

The following command adds a new pool named MyPool on the host named llama with the default host, user id, and group id permissions:

```
vmpool -h llama -add MyPool "my description with spaces" ANYHOST -1  
-2
```

The following command lists all pools configured on the host where the command is executed:

```
vmpool -listall -b
```

NOTES

Only limited validation of the option parameters is done.



uid and *gid* should only be used for restricting access to volumes by user or by group on UNIX hosts.



vmquery

NAME

vmquery - Query the volume database, or assign and unassign volumes

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmquery [-h volume_database_host, ... -h  
volume_database_host] [-b | -w] -a | -m media_id | -v  
volume_group | -rn robot_number | -rt robot_type | -mt  
media_type | -p pool_number | -pn pool_name | -res  
robot_type robot_number robot_host rob_slot rob_side |  
-assignbyid media_id media_type pool_number stat asg_time |  
-deassignbyid media_id pool_number stat
```

DESCRIPTION

Query the volume database for volume information. The `-h`, `-b`, and `-w` options are not required, but you must choose only one of the other (eleven) options.

The `-b` or `-w` option can be used in conjunction with any of the other eleven options, but the `-b` or `-w` options cannot be specified together.

OPTIONS

Note The following option is applicable only for NetBackup DataCenter.

`-h` *volume_database_host*

Name of the host that has the volume database maintaining information about the volumes in a robot. If no host is specified, the host where you execute the command is assumed. Up to 100 volume database hosts can be queried.

`-b`

Specifies the brief output format for volume information. This option can be used in conjunction with any of the other eleven options.

`-w`

Specifies the wide output format for volume information. This option includes additional information not shown by the `-b` option and can be used in conjunction with any of the other eleven options.

`-a`

Show all volumes.



- m media_id*
Query volumes by media id. The media id is a maximum of 6 ASCII characters.
- v volume_group*
Query volumes by volume group. A volume group is a logical grouping that identifies a set of volumes that reside at the same physical location.
- rn robot_number*
Query volumes by robot number. A robot number is a unique, logical identification number for the robot where the volume is located.
- rt robot_type*
Query volumes by the type of the robot where the volume is located.
Valid robot types for NetBackup DataCenter are: none, acs, lmf, odl, rsm, tl4, tl8, tld, tlh, tlm, ts8, tsd, tsh.
Valid robot types for NetBackup BusinessServer are: none, rsm, tl4, tl8, tld, ts8, tsd.
- mt media_type*
Query volumes by media type.
Valid media types for NetBackup DataCenter are: 4mm, 8mm, 8mm2, 8mm3, dlt, dlt2, dlt3, dtf, hcart, hcart2, hcart3, odiskwm, odiskwo, qcart, 4mm_clean, 8mm_clean, 8mm2_clean, 8mm3_clean, dlt_clean, dlt2_clean, dlt3_clean, dtf_clean, hcart_clean, hcart2_clean, hcart3_clean.
Valid media types for NetBackup BusinessServer are: 4mm, 8mm, dlt, hcart, qcart, 4mm_clean, 8mm_clean, dlt_clean, hcart_clean.
- p pool_number*
Query volumes by pool number. Pool number is an index into the volume pool. You can use `vmppool -listall` to determine the index for a given pool name.
- pn pool_name*
Query volumes by pool name.
- res robot_type robot_number robot_host rob_slot rob_side*
Query volumes by residence.
- robot_host*
Name of the host which controls the robot, where the volume is located.
- rob_slot*
This is the slot number in the robot (robot coordinate 1) where the volume resides.
- rob_side*
This is the platter side (robot coordinate 2) for optical disks (A or B). If the volume is not an optical disk, specify zero for *rob_side*.



`-assignbyid media_id media_type pool_number stat asg_time`
Assign volume by media id, pool, and status.

stat

Status applies only to volumes that are assigned to NetBackup or Storage Migrator.

A status of 0 means the volume is assigned to NetBackup regular backups.

A status of 1 means the volume is assigned to NetBackup catalog backups.

A status of 2 means the volume is assigned to Storage Migrator (valid with NetBackup DataCenter only).

A status of 3 means the volume is assigned to Storage Migrator for Microsoft Exchange or Storage Migrator for Windows 2000.

asg_time

Applies only to volumes assigned to NetBackup or Storage Migrator (NetBackup DataCenter only).

asg_time is the time when the volume was assigned and is the number of seconds since 00:00:00 UTC, January 1, 1970. *asg_time* was originally created using the `time()` call.

`-deassignbyid media_id pool_number stat`
Unassign volume by media id, pool, and status.

Caution Unassigning volumes may cause inconsistencies between the application media database and the volume database, leading to possible data loss. You *must* use a NetBackup application interface (for example, NetBackup Console) to expire the media after unassigning volumes.

EXAMPLES

The following command lists all volume information, in brief format from the volume database on the host named llama:

```
vmquery -h llama -b -a
```

The following command assigns volume A23456, which is in pool 1 (NetBackup), and sets the status to 0 and the assign time to 12/31/98 15:50:22:

```
vmquery -assignbyid A23456 8mm 1 0 915141022
```

The following command unassigns volume A23456, which is in pool 1 (NetBackup), with a status of 0:

```
vmquery -deassignbyid A23456 1 0
```



NOTES

Only limited validation of the option parameters is done.

SEE ALSO

vmadd, vmchange, vmdelete, vmpool



vmrule

NAME

vmrule - Manage barcode rules

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmrule [-h volume_database_host] -listall  
[-b] | -add barcode_tag media_type pool_name max_mounts  
"description" | -change barcode_tag media_type pool_name  
max_mounts "description" | -delete barcode_tag
```

DESCRIPTION

Use this command to add, change, delete, or list barcode rules. The -h option is not required, but you must chose one and only one of the other four options.

OPTIONS

Note The following option is only applicable for NetBackup DataCenter.

- h *volume_database_host*
Name of the host that has the volume database which contains information about the volumes in a robot. If no host is specified, the host where you execute the command is assumed.
- listall [-b]
List information about all barcode rules. You can use the -b option to specify a brief format for the barcode rule information that is displayed.
- add *barcode_tag media_type pool_name max_mounts "description"*
Add a new barcode rule.
- change *barcode_tag media_type pool_name max_mounts "description"*
Change a barcode rule.
- delete *barcode_tag*
Delete a barcode rule.
- barcode_tag*
Specifies the barcode prefix which will invoke the barcode rule.
- media_type*
Specifies the media type of the volume, a barcode rule attribute. This affects whether the rule will be used and also affects the media type for volumes added using a robot inventory update.

Valid media types for NetBackup DataCenter are: 4mm, 8mm, 8mm2, 8mm3, dlt, dlt2, dlt3, dtf, hcart, hcart2, hcart3, odiskwm, odiskwo, qcart, 4mm_clean, 8mm_clean, 8mm2_clean, 8mm3_clean, dlt_clean, dlt2_clean, dlt3_clean, dtf_clean, hcart_clean, hcart2_clean, hcart3_clean.

Valid media types for NetBackup BusinessServer are: 4mm, 8mm, dlt, hcart, qcart, 4mm_clean, 8mm_clean, dlt_clean, hcart_clean.

pool_name

Specifies the pool to which the volumes will be added.

max_mounts

Maximum number of mounts allowed for this volume (when the volume is added). This option is used only for non-cleaning media. When this limit is exceeded, the volume can only be mounted for read operations.

"description"

Description of the barcode rule. The double quote marks are required if the description contains any spaces.

EXAMPLES

The following command creates a rule that defines any tape with a barcode starting with ABC is a DLT tape in the NetBackup pool. The tape can be mounted up to 100 times for writes and is given a description.

```
vmrule -add ABC dlt NetBackup 100 "DLT cleaning tape"
```

NOTES

Only limited validation of the option parameters is done.

SEE ALSO

vmupdate



vmupdate

NAME

vmupdate - Inventory the media contents of a robotic library and update the volume database

SYNOPSIS

```
install_path\Volmgr\bin\vmupdate -rt robot_type -rn robot_number [-rh  
robot_host] [-h volume_database_host] [[-if  
inventory_filter_value] [-if inventory_filter_value] ...] [-full]  
[-recommend] [-interactive] [-involgrp volume_group]  
[-outvolgrp volume_group] [-mt media_type] [-p pool_name]  
[-use_barcode_rules] [-use_seed] [-mp media_id_prefix]  
[-no_sides] [-no_format_optical] [-overwrite_labels]  
[-empty_map]
```

DESCRIPTION

Inventory the media contents of a robotic library and update the volume database. If no options are specified, the volume configuration is updated to match the robot contents.

OPTIONS

-rt *robot_type*

Specifies the robot type of the robot to inventory.

Valid robot types for NetBackup DataCenter are: none, acs, lmf, odl, rsm, tl4, tl8, tld, tlh, tlm, ts8, tsd, tsh.

Valid robot types for NetBackup BusinessServer are: none, rsm, tl4, tl8, tld, ts8, tsd.

-rn *robot_number*

Unique, logical identification number for the robot to inventory.

-rh *robot_host*

Name of the host which controls the robot. If no host is specified, the host where you execute this command is assumed.

Note The following two options are only applicable for NetBackup DataCenter.

-h *volume_database_host*

Name of the host that has the volume database which contains information about the volumes in a robot. If no host is specified, the host where you execute this command is assumed.



-
- if *inventory_filter_value*
Specifies inventory filter values. Multiple -if options may be specified. The inventory filter value is an ACS scratch pool ID, a TLH volume category, or an LMF barcode prefix.
The -if and -full options cannot be specified together.
 - full
Specifies full inventory. The -full and -if options cannot be specified together.
 - recommend
Lists changes required to update the volume configuration.
 - interactive
Prompts you before updating the volume configuration.
 - involgrp *volume_group*
Specifies the volume group for media moved into the robot.
 - outvolgrp *volume_group*
Specifies the volume group for media moved out of the robot.
 - mt *media_type*
Specifies the media type of the volume.
Valid media types for NetBackup DataCenter are: 4mm, 8mm, 8mm2, 8mm3, dlt, dlt2, dlt3, dtf, hcart, hcart2, hcart3, odiskwm, odiskwo, qcart, 4mm_clean, 8mm_clean, 8mm2_clean, 8mm3_clean, dlt_clean, dlt2_clean, dlt3_clean, dtf_clean, hcart_clean, hcart2_clean, hcart3_clean.
Valid media types for NetBackup BusinessServer are: 4mm, 8mm, dlt, hcart, qcart, 4mm_clean, 8mm_clean, dlt_clean, hcart_clean.
 - p *pool_name*
Specifies the name of the volume pool to which new media will be assigned.
 - use_barcode_rules
Specifies that barcode rules will be used for assigning attributes to new media.
 - use_seed
Specifies automatic generation of media IDs for media with no barcodes.
 - mp *media_id_prefix*
Specifies the prefix that is used as a seed to generate new media IDs for media with no barcodes.
 - no_sides
Specifies that any new optical media IDs will not always contain platter side A or B.



- no_format_optical
Specifies to NOT format new optical media.
- overwrite_labels
Specifies that existing labels will be overwritten when formatting optical media.
- empty_map
Specifies that volumes in the media access port (map) will be moved into the robot before the robot inventory is started. This option is only valid for TL8, TLD, or TLM robot types.

EXAMPLES

The following command updates the volume configuration on the host named mymaster to match the contents of TLD robot 7 connected to the host macris:

```
vmupdate -rt tld -rn 7 -rh macris -h mymaster
```

NOTES

Only limited validation of the option parameters is done.

SEE ALSO

vmcheckxxx

Media Manager Reference Topics

B

This chapter includes the following Media Manager reference and conceptual topics:

- ◆ Robot Overview
- ◆ Correlating Device Files to Physical Drives When Adding Drives
- ◆ Drive Cleaning
- ◆ Volume Pools and Volume Groups
- ◆ Barcodes
- ◆ vmd Security
- ◆ How Media Manager Selects a Drive for a Robotic Mount Request
- ◆ Administrators Quick Reference
- ◆ Media Manager Configuration File (vm.conf)

Robot Overview

In Media Manager, a robot is a peripheral device that contains a mechanism for the automated mounting and dismounting of media in tape drives. A robot may also be called a robotic library, media changer, automated library, jukebox, or tape stacker. Media Manager considers any of these types of devices to be robots. Media Manager software that controls robots is referred to as robotic control software.

Media Manager Robot Types

Media Manager classifies robots by robot type, according to one of the following:

- ◆ The physical characteristics of the robot.
 - Library usually refers to a larger robot, in terms of slot capacity or number of drives.
 - Stacker usually refers to a robot with one drive and low media capacity.
- ◆ The media type commonly used by that class of robots.



4 MM and 8 MM are examples of media types.

The following table lists the Media Manager robot types, with drive and slot limits for each type. Visit the VERITAS support web site (<http://www.support.veritas.com>) to determine which robot type applies to the model of robot that you are using.

Media Manager Robot Types

Robot Type	Description	Drive Limits	Slot Limits
RSM	Removable Storage Manager	2	30
TL4	Tape Library 4MM	1	15
TL8	Tape Library 8MM	2	30
TLD	Tape Library DLT	2	30
TS8	Tape Stacker 8MM	2	21
TSD	Tape Stacker DLT	1	14

Media Manager Media Types

Media Manager uses media types to differentiate tape media with differing physical characteristics. Each Media Manager media type may represent a specific physical media type, for example Sony AIT media can have a Media Manager media type of 8MM, 8MM2, or 8MM3.

The following table lists the Media Manager media types:

Media Manager Media Types

Media Type	Description
QCART	1/4 inch cartridge tape
HCART	1/2 inch cartridge tape
4MM	4MM cartridge tape
8MM	8MM cartridge tape
DLT	DLT cartridge tape



Media Manager Media Types (continued)

Media Type	Description
HC_CLN	1/2 inch cleaning tape
4MM_CLN	4MM cleaning tape
8MM_CLN	8MM cleaning tape
DLT_CLN	DLT cleaning tape

Robot Attributes

Media Manager configures and controls a robot device differently depending on the robot type. The following tables list the attributes that dictate how these robot types differ.

Note See the NetBackup release notes or visit the VERITAS support web site for more detailed information on supported peripherals, platforms, and firmware levels tested.

RSM Robot Attributes

Attribute	Comment
SCSI Control	No
LAN Control	No
Remote Robot Control	No
NDMP Support	No
Shared Drives Support	No
Media Type Support	4MM 8MM DLT HCART QIC



RSM Robot Attributes (continued)

Attribute	Comment
Barcode Support	Yes, if the robot supports barcodes. Barcodes are assumed to be the same as the media ID.
Drive Cleaning Support	No, drive cleaning is supported using the RSM utilities in Windows 2000.
Media Access Port Support	Eject is supported. Inject is not supported, but the Windows 2000 RSM Inject wizard can be used.
Media Manager Tracks Slots	No
For More Information	See the RSM appendix, "Microsoft Removable Storage Manager (RSM)" on page 269.
Robot Examples	Exabyte 210 Quantum DLTStor
Host Supported	Windows 2000

TL4 Robot Attributes

Attribute	Comment
SCSI Control	Yes
NDMP Support	No
Media Type Support	4MM
Barcode Support	No, but the robot has inventory capability and can report whether a slot has media.
Drive Cleaning Support	Yes
Media Access Port Support	No
Media Manager Tracks Slots	Yes
For More Information	See the NetBackup Media Manager device configuration guide for UNIX.



TL4 Robot Attributes (continued)

Attribute	Comment
Robot Examples	ADIC 4mm DAT Autochanger HP DAT Autoloader
Host Supported	Windows UNIX

TL8 Robot Attributes

Attribute	Comment
SCSI Control	Yes
NDMP Support	Yes
Media Type Support	8MM
Barcode Support	Yes
Drive Cleaning Support	Yes
Media Access Port Support	Yes
Media Manager Tracks Slots	Yes
For More Information	See the NetBackup Media Manager device configuration guide for UNIX.
Robot Examples	IBM 7331 Exabyte X200
Host Supported	Windows UNIX



TLD Robot Attributes

Attribute	Comment
SCSI Control	Yes
NDMP Support	Yes
Media Type Support	DLT 8MM HCART
Barcode Support	Yes
Drive Cleaning Support	Yes
Media Access Port Support	Yes
Media Manager Tracks Slots	Yes
For More Information	See the NetBackup Media Manager device configuration guide for UNIX.
Robot Examples	ADIC Scalar HP SureStore DLT Library STK 7430
Host Supported	Windows UNIX

TS8 Robot Attributes

Attribute	Comment
SCSI Control	Yes
NDMP Support	No
Media Type Support	8MM



TS8 Robot Attributes (continued)

Attribute	Comment
Barcode Support	Yes
Drive Cleaning Support	Yes
Media Access Port Support	No
Media Manager Tracks Slots	Yes
For More Information	See the NetBackup Media Manager device configuration guide for UNIX.
Robot Examples	Exabyte 10x Exabyte 210
Host Supported	Windows UNIX

TSD Robot Attributes

Attribute	Comment
SCSI Control	Yes
NDMP Support	Yes
Media Type Support	DLT
Barcode Support	No, but the robot has inventory capability and can report whether a slot has media.
Drive Cleaning Support	Yes
Media Access Port Support	No
Media Manager Tracks Slots	Yes
For More Information	See the NetBackup Media Manager device configuration guide for UNIX.



TSD Robot Attributes (continued)

Attribute	Comment
Robot Examples	Sun StorEdge L280 Quantum DLTStor
Host Supported	Windows UNIX

Table-Driven Robotics

Table-driven robotics provides support for some new library devices without the need to modify any robotic library control binaries. This feature uses external device mapping files for supported robots and drives.

This means that support for your new or upgraded devices may be accomplished without waiting for a patch from VERITAS. Since the external device mapping files include pertinent information relating to the operation and control of libraries, support for some new devices may only require that you download an updated external mapping file when any device changes are made to your configuration.

See “External Device Mapping Files” on page 26 for information on how to download the latest mapping files for your devices.

Robotic Test Utilities

You can use the robotic test utilities for configured robots by executing *install_path\volmgr\bin\robtest.exe* and selecting the desired robotic library.

From each test utility, you can obtain a list of available test commands by entering a question mark.

Robotic Processes

A Media Manager robotic and possibly a robotic control process exist for any robotic library that you may install on a Windows media server.

Every Media server that has a drive in a robotic library has a robotic process for that robotic library. The robotic process receives requests from the NetBackup Device Manager and sends necessary information directly to the robotics or to a robotic control process.



Robotic control processes exist only for robot types that support *library sharing* (or *robot sharing*). Library sharing allows different drives in a robot to be connected to different hosts. Library sharing is not supported in NetBackup BusinessServer.

Starting the NetBackup Device Manager service on a media server starts the robotic and robotic control processes for all robots configured on that host. Stopping this service stops these processes.

The Services tab of the NetBackup Activity Monitor has commands for starting and stopping all services, including the NetBackup Device Manager service. You can also start and stop this service through commands on the Device Monitor **Actions** menu or the Media and Device Management **Actions** menu. In addition, “Media Manager Commands and Processes” on page 161 describes commands for controlling robotic processes that run on Windows media servers.

When a robotic or robotic control process is running, the NetBackup Activity monitor processes tab shows it in the UP or DOWN state. When a connection is made to the appropriate robotic library, the corresponding process is in the UP state and can mount or unmount tapes. If the connection cannot be made or errors exist, the process changes to the DOWN state. In the DOWN state the process is still running and returns to the UP state when the connection is made or problems no longer exist.

The following table lists the robotic and robotic control processes for each robot type that are supported on Windows media servers.

Robotic and Robotic Control Processes

Robot	Process	Description
Tape Library DLT (TLD)	t1dd t1dcd	t1dd, runs on a NetBackup server that has a drive in the Tape Library DLT. This process receives NetBackup Device Manager requests to mount and unmount volumes, and sends these requests to the robotic-control process, t1dcd. t1dcd communicates with the Tape Library DLT robotics through a SCSI interface.
Tape Library 4MM (TL4)	t14d	t14d runs on the host that has a Tape Library 4MM. This process receives NetBackup Device Manager requests to mount and unmount volumes and communicates these requests to the robotics through a SCSI interface.
Tape Library 8MM (TL8)	t18d t18cd	t18d, runs on a NetBackup server that has a drive in the Tape Library 8MM. This process receives NetBackup Device Manager requests to mount and unmount volumes, and sends these requests to the robotic-control process, t18cd. t18cd communicates with the TL8 robotics through a SCSI interface.



Robotic and Robotic Control Processes (continued)

Robot	Process	Description
Tape Stacker 8MM (TS8)	ts8d	ts8d runs on the NetBackup server that has a Tape Stacker 8MM attached. This process receives NetBackup Device Manager requests to mount and unmount volumes and communicates these requests to the robotics through a SCSI interface.
Tape Stacker DLT (TSD)	tsdd	tsdd runs on the NetBackup server that has a Tape Stacker DLT attached. This process receives NetBackup Device Manager requests to mount and unmount volumes and communicates these requests to the robotics through a SCSI interface.
Removable Storage Manager (RSM)	rsmd	rsmd runs on a Windows 2000 NetBackup server. rsmd interfaces with NetBackup Device Manager to mount and unmount tapes that are under Microsoft RSM control.

Correlating Device Files to Physical Drives When Adding Drives

The following two topics may not be necessary, if you used the Device Configuration Wizard to configure your drives, and the drives and robotic libraries both support device serialization.

- ◆ Correlating On Windows Hosts.
- ◆ Correlating On UNIX Hosts.

Correlating On Windows Hosts

When selecting the drive address (for example, robot drive number) for a tape drive, match the logical device name with the drives in the physical drive layout as follows:

1. Note the SCSI target of the drive and check the Windows Tape Devices display to determine which device name (for example, Tape0) was assigned to the drive.
2. Correlate the SCSI target to the drive address using the robot's interface panel or checking the indicators on the rear panel of the tape drive.
3. Determine the physical drive address (for example, number) by checking labels on the robot itself or by using the diagrams in the Robot Drive and Slot Layout appendix. This appendix shows the layout for many of the robots that Media Manager supports.



4. Configure the robot and then add the drives.

When you add the drives, check your notes to ensure that you are assigning the correct drive address to each device path.

5. Optionally, use the appropriate robotic test utility to verify the configuration.

- a.** Stop the NetBackup Device Manager service (`ltid`).
- b.** Start `ltid` to start the Automatic Volume Recognition process (`avrd`).
You must stop and restart `ltid` to ensure that the current device configuration has been activated.
- c.** Use the robotic test utility to mount a tape on a drive.
- d.** Use the Device Monitor to verify the tape was mounted on the correct robot drive.

For example, assume you have the following drives in a TLD robot and have the device names configured as follows:

Drive 1: `Tape0`

Drive 2: `Tape1`

Also assume that in step c you requested that the tape be mounted on Drive 1. If the device name for the drive is correctly configured, the Device Monitor shows the tape mounted on Drive 1. Unload and unmount the tape from Drive 1 using the robotic test utility. Repeat the test for each drive.

During your testing, if the Device Monitor shows the tape mounted on a drive other than the drive you specified in the test utility, the device name for that drive is not correctly configured. For instance, if you mounted a tape on Drive 2 and the Device Monitor shows the tape mounted on Drive 1, the device name for Drive 2 is incorrect. Replace the Drive 2 device name (`Tape1`) with the correct device name (`Tape0`) for Drive 1. You may need to use a temporary device name while making these changes.

Correlating On UNIX Hosts

Establish device file to physical drive correlation during installation when you create the device files for each drive. The following is a general procedure:



1. Determine the physical location of each drive within the robotic library. This is usually shown on the connectors to the drives or in the vendor's documentation. The Robot Drive and Slot Layout appendix shows drive locations in many of the robots that Media Manager supports.
2. Physically connect the drives to SCSI adapters in your host.
3. Record the adapter and SCSI addresses to which you connected each drive.
4. Create device files for each drive based on the SCSI addresses of the drives and adapters. Add the device file using your notes from step 3 to complete the correlation between device files and physical drive location.

5. Configure the robot and then add the drives.

When you add the drives, check your notes to ensure that you are assigning the correct drive address (for example, robot drive number) to each device path.

6. Optionally, you can use the appropriate robotic test utility to verify the configuration.
 - a. Stop the device daemon (`ltid`).
 - b. Start `ltid` to start the Automatic Volume Recognition daemon (`avrd`).
You must stop and restart `ltid` to ensure that the current device configuration has been activated.
 - c. Use the robotic test utility to mount a tape on a drive.
 - d. Use the Device Monitor to verify the tape was mounted on the correct robot drive.

For example, assume you have the following drives in a TLD robot and have the device paths configured as follows:

Drive 1: `/dev/rmt/0cbr`

Drive 2: `/dev/rmt/1cbr`

Also assume that in step c you requested that the tape be mounted on Drive 1. If the device path for the drive is correctly configured, the Device Monitor shows the tape mounted on Drive 1. Unload and unmount the tape from Drive 1 using the robotic test utility. Repeat the test for each drive.

During your testing, if the Device Monitor shows the tape mounted on a drive other than the drive you specified in the test utility, the device path for that drive is not correctly configured. For instance, if you mounted a tape on Drive 2 and the Device Monitor shows the tape mounted on Drive 1, the device path for Drive 2 is incorrect.



Replace the Drive 2 device path (`/dev/rmt/1cbn`) with the correct device path (`/dev/rmt/0cbn`) for Drive 1. You may need to use a temporary device path while making these changes.

Drive Cleaning

For drives in libraries that are under RSM robotic control, the Windows 2000 RSM software controls drive cleaning. Use the Windows 2000 administrative interfaces to manage drive cleaning.

Note Library-based cleaning is not supported by Media Manager for most robots, since robotic library and operating systems vendors have implemented this type of cleaning in many different ways.

This topic on drive cleaning covers the following areas:

- ◆ Frequency-Based Cleaning
- ◆ On-Demand Cleaning
- ◆ TapeAlert
- ◆ Using a Cleaning Tape

Frequency-Based Cleaning

When you add a drive, you can specify the number of hours (cleaning frequency) a drive will be used between drive cleanings. Media Manager updates the mount time for the drive each time a tape is unmounted. You can also change the cleaning frequency value.

If the following conditions are met, drive cleaning occurs when the accumulated mount time exceeds the time you specified for cleaning frequency:

- ◆ The drive is in a robotic library that supports cleaning (see “Robot Attributes” on page 215).
- ◆ A cleaning tape is configured and available in Media Manager for the robotic library.
- ◆ The cleaning tape has cleanings remaining.

Media Manager cleans the drive immediately after the unmount. Drive cleaning never causes an unmount in the middle of an active backup. The mount time is reset after the drive is cleaned. The cleaning frequency value remains the same.

A cleaning can occur within a backup if you are spanning tapes. For example, if cleaning is due after the first tape is full, Media Manager cleans the drive before proceeding to the next tape.



Leaving media in a drive for extended periods does not affect cleaning frequency because Media Manager increments the mount time only when the media is actually assigned to a process.

To set, change or reset the cleaning frequency, use the `tpclean` command (see the appendix, “Media Manager Commands and Processes” on page 161).

On-Demand Cleaning

If the drive is standalone or if a cleaning tape is not defined, the message `NEEDS CLEANING` appears in the Comment field of the output from the `tpclean -L` command. You can then use the `tpclean` command to clean the drive and reset the accumulated mount time to zero after cleaning the drive.

You can manually clean a drive regardless of the cleaning frequency and accumulated mount time. You can clean standalone and robotic drives if a cleaning tape of the correct media type and residence for the drive has been added to the appropriate volume database.

TapeAlert

Reactive cleaning using TapeAlert is a function of the tape drive. If a drive supports the TapeAlert feature and TapeAlert is enabled on the drive, Media Manager polls the drive for status from TapeAlert.

TapeAlert allows reactive cleaning for most drive types. Not all platforms, robots, and drives, at all firmware levels, support this type of reactive cleaning. In the cases where TapeAlert is not supported on a particular drive, frequency-based cleaning may be utilized (see “Frequency-Based Cleaning” on page 225 and “TapeAlert and Frequency-based Cleaning” on page 227).

Since TapeAlert provides the same type of cleaning as library-based cleaning (also known as robotic cleaning or auto cleaning), it is recommended that you disable library-based cleaning when using TapeAlert (for most vendor’s robots).

Requirements for TapeAlert and Media Manager

To use TapeAlert with Media Manager, you need the following conditions to be met. No additional configuration is needed.

- ◆ The drive must support the TapeAlert feature and the feature must be enabled on the drive.

To determine if drives support TapeAlert, see the VERITAS support site for information on drive support for TapeAlert.



- ◆ A cleaning tape is configured and available in Media Manager for the robotic library.
- ◆ The cleaning tape has cleanings remaining.

TapeAlert and Media Manager

A drive with TapeAlert knows how many read and write errors it has encountered within a certain time period. Although these errors are recoverable, once a threshold is reached a CLEAN_NOW or CLEAN_PERIODIC flag is set by TapeAlert.

If Media Manager finds either of these flags set, it performs a cleaning at *one* of the following times:

- ◆ At the end of a backup or restore to the drive.
- ◆ Prior to the next backup or restore to the drive.

TapeAlert and Frequency-based Cleaning

Using TapeAlert *with* frequency-based cleaning ensures that a given drive will get cleaned at least every x hours, depending on the cleaning frequency value. In addition the drive may be cleaned sooner, if the CLEAN_NOW or CLEAN_PERIODIC flags are set by the drive.

Using TapeAlert *without* frequency-based cleaning, ensures that the tape will be cleaned only when the drive sets its CLEAN_NOW or CLEAN_PERIODIC flags.

Using a Cleaning Tape

You can specify the number of cleanings that are allowed for a cleaning tape. This number is decremented with each cleaning and when it is zero, Media Manager stops using the cleaning tape. At this point, you can use a new cleaning tape or increase the number of cleanings allowed. You can also change this number of cleanings at any time in Media Manager.

Volume Pools and Volume Groups

This topic on volume pools and groups covers the following areas:

- ◆ Volume Pools
- ◆ Volume Groups
- ◆ Volume Pools and Groups Example
- ◆ Scratch Volume Pools



- ◆ Moving Volumes

Volume Pools

A volume pool is used to identify a logical set of volumes by usage. Associating volumes with a volume pool protects them from access by unauthorized applications. You can create volume pools for applications or other reasons; and as you add volumes, associate them with the appropriate pool. You can also move unassigned volumes to a different pool later.

With the exception of the NetBackup and DataStore volume pools, you must create a volume pool before you can add volumes to it. By default, Media Manager creates volume pools, named NetBackup and DataStore.

During initial configuration, it is easiest to create all of your volume pools first if you want to use volume pools other than the NetBackup volume pool. Then as you add volumes, you can assign them to these volume pools.

You can also configure a scratch volume pool (see “Scratch Volume Pools” on page 230).

Volume Groups

A volume group is a logical grouping that identifies a set of volumes that reside at the same physical location. Volume groups are an administration convenience for logically moving multiple volumes (where a logical move means to change the volume attributes to show the new location). Using a volume group lets you move a set of volumes between a robotic library and a standalone location, or delete them from the configuration by specifying the group name, rather than each individual media ID. Volume groups are also convenient for tracking location, such as when a group is moved offsite.

The following are the rules for assigning volume groups:

- ◆ All volumes in a group must be the same media type.
However, a media type and its corresponding cleaning media type are allowed in the same volume group (for example, DLT and DLT_CLN).
- ◆ All volumes in a robotic library *must* belong to a volume group. You cannot add volumes to a robotic library without specifying a group or having Media Manager generate a name.
- ◆ The only way to clear a volume group name is to move the volume to standalone and not specify a volume group.
- ◆ More than one volume group can share the same location. For example, a robotic library can contain volumes from more than one volume group and you can have more than one standalone volume group.



- ◆ All members of a group must be in the same robotic library or be standalone.

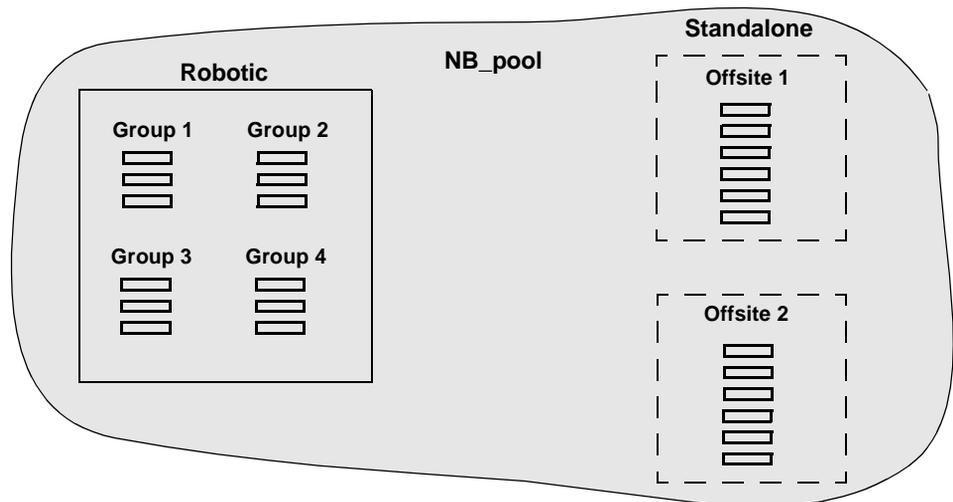
Do not confuse volume pools with volume groups. Remember that

- ◆ A volume pool identifies a set of volumes by usage.
- ◆ A volume group identifies a set of volumes by physical location and, like the volume pool, is specified when you add the volume. Groups are convenient for updating the configuration when moving volumes (for example from robotic to standalone).

Volume Pools and Groups Example

The following figure shows an example with one volume pool (NB_pool) and several volume groups. In this example, volumes can be moved between the groups in the robotic library and the groups that are offsite. All volumes, however, remain in the same pool.

Volume Pool With Multiple Volume Groups

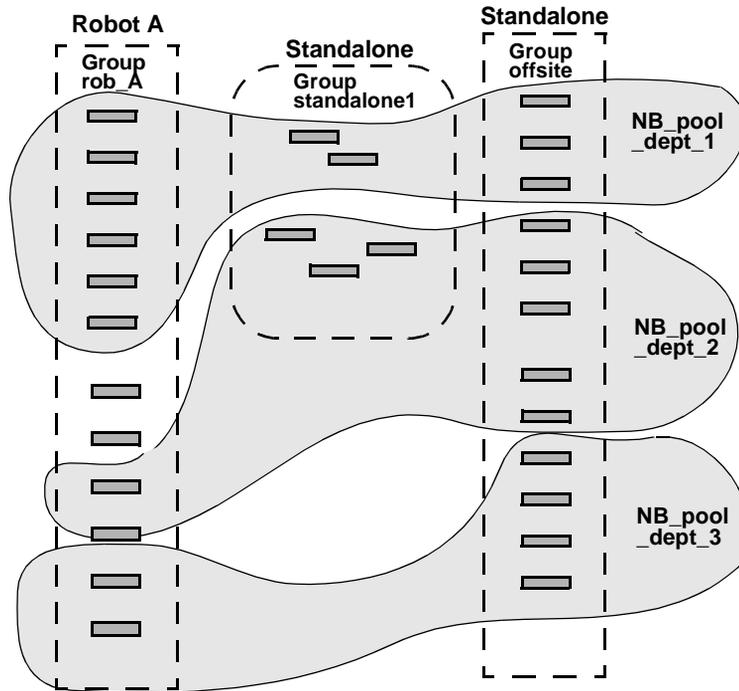


In the following figure, members of the same volume pools are in different volume groups. The important thing to notice in this example is that the data intended for use by different departments are kept on separate volumes by assigning different volume pools. The volumes in a pool can be in more than one physical location and in more than one volume group.

In this example, the volumes in NB_pool_dept_1 are spread among the rob_A, standalone1, and offsite volume groups. These groups also have volumes from more than one pool (though the volumes in each group must all be the same type).



Volume Groups With Multiple Volume Pools



It is also possible to configure a scratch pool from which Media Manager can transfer volumes when another volume pool has no media available (see “Scratch Volume Pools” on page 230).

Scratch Volume Pools

The scratch pool is an optional volume pool that you can configure. Each media server in your configuration can have one scratch pool configured. If a scratch pool is configured, Media Manager moves volumes from that pool to other pools that have do not have volumes available.

See “Adding a New Volume Pool or Scratch Volume Pool” on page 56 for configuration information.

For example in the following figure, the scratch pool is named Scratch_pool and Robot C contains volumes from that pool in addition to those from other pools. Assume the following

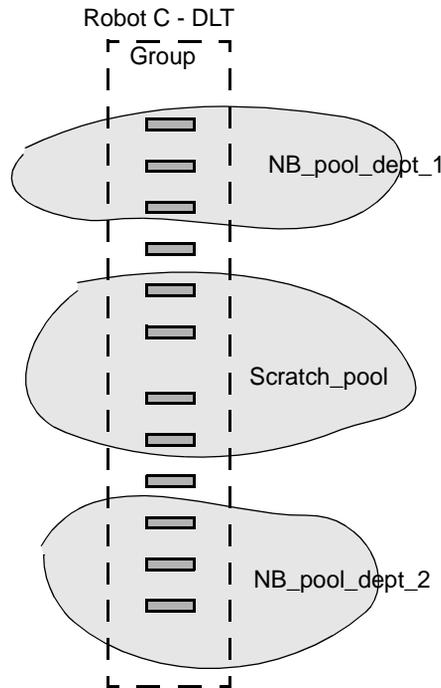
- ◆ NetBackup requires a DLT volume, so Media Manager attempts to assign one from NB_pool_dept_1 in Robot C.



- ◆ Robot C has no unassigned volumes available in the NB_pool_dept_1 pool.

Media Manager searches the scratch pool for an unassigned DLT volume in Robot C. If there is an available volume, Media Manager moves it to NB_pool_dept_1 and assigns it to NetBackup. Otherwise, a media unavailable status is logged.

Scratch Pools



The following list contains important notes on scratch pool usage:

- ◆ If the scratch pool contains assigned volumes, these volumes remain in the scratch pool. Media Manager does not move assigned volumes to other pools as it does with unassigned volumes.
- ◆ Media Manager will not assign volumes while they are in a scratch pool. For example, if a NetBackup policy or schedule specifies the scratch pool, all requests for those volumes are denied.
- ◆ Volumes moved from a scratch pool to another pool remain in that new pool. Media Manager does not automatically move it again for any reason, but you can manually reassign it to another volume pool.
- ◆ To have Media Manager manage the allocation of your volumes to your volume pools, do one of the following:



- Create volume pools as required, but do not add any volumes to the pools.
- Create a scratch pool and add all of your volumes to it. Media Manager will move volumes to the other pools as they are required.

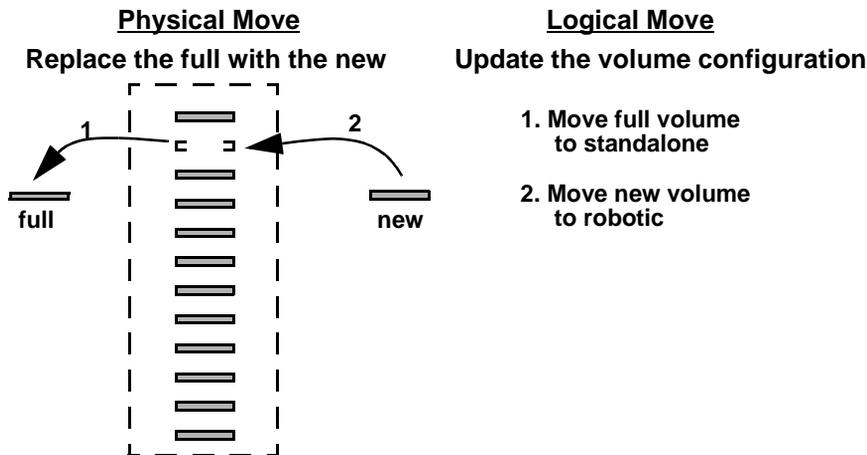
Moving Volumes

When you move volumes in or out of a robotic library, you must physically and logically move the volume (see the following figure).

- ◆ The physical part of the move is done when you insert or remove the volume. For some robot types, you can use Media Manager to physically move the volume (using Inject/Eject options).
- ◆ The logical part of the move is done when you use Media Manager to move volumes. Media Manager updates the volume database to show the volume at the *new* location.

Example of Moving Volumes

Example of replacing a full volume with a new volume.



Common instances when you move volumes are as follows:

- ◆ Replacing full volumes in a robotic library. When a volume is full and there are no more empty slots in the robotic library, you move the full volume to standalone and configure a volume for the empty slot, or move a volume into that slot. Use the same process to replace a defective volume.
- ◆ Moving volumes from a robotic library to an offsite location or from an offsite location into a robotic library. When you move tapes to an offsite location, you move them to standalone.



- ◆ Changing the volume group for a volume or volumes.

In one move operation, you can move a single volume, multiple volumes, or combinations of single and multiple volumes. You are limited only in that you cannot move volumes to an invalid location (for example, DLT media to an 8-mm robot).

The best approach is to keep your moves simple by selecting and moving only one type of media at a time to a single destination. For example, if you have to move 8 mm and 4 mm cartridge tapes, do it in separate moves.

Barcodes

Reading barcodes is a function of the robotic library hardware. When a robotic library has a barcode reader, it scans the media for barcodes and saves the results. This associates the slot number and the barcode with the media in that slot. Media Manager obtains this association from the robotic library.

VERITAS suggests that you use media with barcodes in robots that can read barcodes. Barcodes offer the following advantages:

- ◆ Automatic media ID assignment.

When you add new media to a robot, Media Manager is able to assign media IDs according to the criteria that you specify.

- ◆ More accurate tracking of volume location.

The Update Volume Configuration option can easily determine which volumes are in a robot.

- ◆ Increased performance.

Media Manager functions well whether or not barcodes are used. However, not using barcodes can adversely affect performance for some robots.

A robot that reads barcodes will perform a scan each time it moves a tape. This is normal and is done in order to store the correct barcode in memory or to verify a previously saved barcode. However, if a barcode is missing, the robot will retry the scan multiple times, degrading performance.

Note Volumes in an RSM robot use the media name as a volume identifier. This volume identifier is used as the Media Manager media ID. The last six characters of the media name are used. If these characters contain spaces, only the characters back to the first space are used.

When selecting barcodes for your volumes keep the following points in mind:

- ◆ Barcodes appear on labels that you attach to the outside of tape volumes.



- ◆ Media Manager supports barcodes with a maximum of eight characters (a maximum of six characters in RSM robots).
- ◆ When you buy barcode labels for use with Media Manager, always follow the robotic library vendor's recommendations. The following are some general guidelines:

Ensure that the barcodes have the correct number of characters.

Barcodes can represent any combination of alpha and numeric characters, but different robots support different lengths of barcodes. See the vendor's documentation to determine the requirements for a specific robot type.

Use barcodes without spaces (leading spaces, trailing spaces, or spaces between any characters). Otherwise, the robot or Media Manager can have difficulty interpreting them.

- ◆ You can match barcodes to media IDs by getting custom labels with six-character barcodes in the same series as your media IDs. For example, to match a set of media IDs from AA0000 to ZZ9999, get barcode labels in that series.
- ◆ When a robotic library can contain more than one media type, a good strategy for assigning barcodes is to assign specific characters in the barcode to different media types using media ID generation rules (see "Media ID Generation Rules" on page 236). Another approach is to use barcodes to differentiate between data tapes and cleaning tapes, or between volume pools.

Barcode Rules

A barcode rule specifies the criteria for assigning attributes to new robotic volumes. These attributes are assigned by Media Manager according to the barcode on the volume that is detected by the robotic library. In Media Manager, you choose whether to use barcode rules when you set up the robot inventory update operation.

The following table shows some example barcode rules. Rules are sorted first according to the number of characters in the barcode tag and then in the order you add them. Two exceptions are the <NONE> and <DEFAULT> rules, which are always at the end of the list.

Example Barcode Rules

Barcode Tag	Media Type	Volume Pool	Max Mounts/ Cleanings	Description
0080	8MM	b_pool	55	new 008 volumes
DLT	DLT	d_pool	200	dlt backup



Example Barcode Rules (continued)

Barcode Tag	Media Type	Volume Pool	Max Mounts/ Cleanings	Description
CLD	DLT_CLN	None	30	dlt cleaning
CLT	8MM_CLN	None	20	8-mm cleaning
TS8	8MM	t_pool	0	8-mm backup
TS	8MM	None	0	8-mm no pool
<NONE>	DEFAULT	None	0	no barcode
<DEFAULT>	DEFAULT	NetBackup	0	other barcodes

When a robot update operation uses Media Manager barcode rules and a new barcode is detected in a slot, Media Manager searches the rules starting at the top of the list and checks for a barcode tag that matches the new barcode. If a tag matches, the media type for the rule is checked to ensure that it is compatible with the type you specified for the robot update. If the media type also matches, Media Manager uses the rule's media type, volume pool, maximum number of mounts (or number of cleanings), and description when it assigns attributes in the volume database.

Note Media Manager will not use barcode rules for barcodes that are being used by existing volumes.

For example, assume that you select the following Update Options for a new 8-mm tape in a TS8 robot:

Media Type: 8MM
 Volume Group: 00_000_TS8
 Use Barcode Rules: YES
 Volume Pool: DEFAULT

If a new tape in this robotic library has a barcode of TS800001, Media Manager uses the rule with the barcode tag of TS8 and uses the following attributes for the tape:

Media ID: 800001 (last six characters of barcode)
 Volume Group: 00_000_TS8
 Volume Pool: t_pool
 Max Mounts: 0 (infinite)



If a new tape has a barcode of TS000001, Media Manager uses the rule with the barcode tag of TS and the attributes for the tape are:

Media ID: 000001 (last six characters of barcode)

Volume Group: 00_000_TS8

Volume Pool: None

Max Mounts: 0 (infinite)

Media ID Generation Rules

Note To use media ID generation rules, the robot must support barcodes and the robot type cannot be RSM.

Using media ID generation rules allows you to manage your barcodes when you do not want to use the default rule for media ID generation. You control how Media Manager media IDs are created by defining rules that specify which characters of a barcode on tape will be used in the media ID. You also can specify that alphanumeric characters are to be inserted into the ID.

For example, two eight-character barcodes might be S00006L1 and 000006L1. If you do not specify media ID generation rules, Media Manager uses the right-most six characters of the barcode to create its media IDs. In this example, the same media ID for the two barcodes would be created.

Rules can be defined with respect to a robot and barcode lengths. Multiple barcode creation entries can be specified, allowing the ID generation to be specific for each robot; or for each barcode format having different numbers of characters in the barcode. This allows flexibility for multi-media.

vmd Security

Media Manager vmd security works in conjunction with NetBackup authentication/authorization security to control user access to vmd (the NetBackup Volume Manager service).

Media Manager vmd security consists of the following levels of security. Each successive level provides more security. These levels are explained in the following topics:

- ◆ “Media Manager vmd Authentication/Authorization” on page 238.
- ◆ “Media Manager Server-Based vmd Security” on page 239.
- ◆ “Media Manager Enhanced vmd Authorization” on page 240.



Possible NetBackup and Media Manager Conflicts

Media Manager authentication/authorization may affect systems where NetBackup authentication/authorization has been enabled.

Connections to `vmd` will fail if the following are all true:

- ◆ Authentication/authorization are enabled.
- ◆ An `AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED` entry is present in `vm.conf`.
- ◆ The caller of `vmd` does not have the required permission to use `vmd` functions.

If authentication/authorization is needed in NetBackup but not in Media Manager, you can do one of the following:

- ◆ Add `SERVER` entries in `vm.conf`.
- ◆ Have no `SERVER` and no `AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED` entries in `vm.conf`.

NetBackup Authentication/Authorization

NetBackup *authentication* verifies NetBackup client to server access and also controls access to the services available on that host.

NetBackup *authorization* verifies if a NetBackup administration user has permission to use the services available on that host. Authorization provides additional security over the security provided by authentication.

The steps you use to set up security levels for your NetBackup master server apply generally to setting up security for Media Manager media servers. See the NetBackup system administrator's guide (UNIX or Windows) for more information including the following:

- ◆ Explanations of authentication and authorization.
- ◆ Explanations of Enhanced Authentication.
- ◆ Explanations of Enhanced Authorization.
- ◆ Definition of the NetBackup configuration file (`bp.conf`).
- ◆ Definitions of the `methods.txt`, `methods_allow.txt`, and `authorize.txt` files.
- ◆ Information on `bpauthsync(1M)`, `vopied(1M)`, and `vopie_util(1M)` man pages.



Media Manager vmd Authentication/Authorization

Media Manager security for vmd works in conjunction with the following to control access to vmd:

- ◆ NetBackup authentication/authorization
- ◆ Media Manager server-based security
- ◆ Media Manager enhanced authorization

The following two tables provide an overview of Media Manager vmd security. Server Name, used in these matrices, refers to `SERVER` entries in the `vm.conf` file.

See “Media Manager Configuration File (`vm.conf`)” for more information about `SERVER`, `AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED`, and `PREFERRED_GROUP` entries.

No `vm.conf` Entry Present

The following table describes Media Manager vmd security when there is *no* `AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED` entry in the `vm.conf` file.

If Authentication is not enabled (see the fourth row in the table), the resulting security reduces to Media Manager server-based security.

vmd Security Matrix - No `AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED` Entry in `vm.conf`

Access to vmd Functionality?	Server Name is in <code>vm.conf</code>	No Server Names in <code>vm.conf</code> (or there is no <code>vm.conf</code> File)	Server Name is Not in <code>vm.conf</code> (other Server Names are in <code>vm.conf</code>)
Authentication Failed	Denied	Denied	Denied
Authentication Enabled and User is Authorized	Allowed	Allowed	Allowed (overrides server-based security)
Authentication Enabled and User is Not Authorized	Allowed (uses server-based security)	Allowed (uses server-based security)	Denied
Authentication Not Enabled	Allowed	Allowed	Denied



vm.conf Entry Present

The following table describes Media Manager vmd security when there is an `AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED` entry in the `vm.conf` file.

vmd Security Matrix - `AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED` Entry is in `vm.conf`

Access to vmd Functionality?	Server Name is in vm.conf	No Server Names in vm.conf	Server Name is Not in vm.conf (other Server Names are) in vm.conf
Authentication Failed	Denied	Denied	Denied
Authentication Enabled and User is Authorized	Allowed	Allowed	Allowed (overrides server-based security)
Authentication Enabled and User is Not Authorized	Allowed (uses server-based security)	Denied (disables server-based security)	Denied
Authentication Not Enabled	Allowed	Denied	Denied

Your level of security is dependent upon your use of the following:

- ◆ Authentication
- ◆ Authorization
- ◆ `SERVER` entries

Media Manager Server-Based vmd Security

`SERVER` entries in `vm.conf` are used for server-based Media Manager vmd security. Without any `SERVER` entries present on a particular host and without the `AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED` entry present, other hosts can access vmd on the host. You can add `SERVER` entries allowing only specific hosts to remotely access vmd.

If a host's `vm.conf` file contains *any* `SERVER` entries, there *must* also be a `SERVER` entry for that host or it will not be able to manage its own devices.

The fourth row of the table in “No `vm.conf` Entry Present” on page 238 provides an overview of Media Manager server-based vmd security.



Media Manager Enhanced vmd Authorization

The set of commands that Media Manager Enhanced Authorization allows users to execute are limited to those commands that interact with `vmd`. Other administration commands that manipulate the Media Manager database and configuration files directly can not be used by administrators through Enhanced Authorization.

The Media Manager commands that are allowed with Enhanced Authorization follow:

- ◆ `vmadd`
- ◆ `vmchange`
- ◆ `vmdelete`
- ◆ `vmoprcmd`
- ◆ `vmppool`
- ◆ `vmquery`
- ◆ `vmrule`

Setting up Enhanced Authorization

If you want to control user access to administer Media Manager `vmd` commands, see the Enhanced Authentication and Authorization chapter of the UNIX NetBackup system administrator's guide for instructions on using enhanced authentication and authorization.

How Media Manager Selects a Drive for a Robotic Mount Request

When a mount request is issued, `ltid` queries `vmd` on the volume database host(s) for the media ID specified. If the media ID is found, `vmd` returns the location of the media (which robotic library and the storage slot number, if applicable).

If a drive exists that meets the following criteria, the mount request is forwarded to the appropriate robotic process.

- ◆ The drive is configured.
- ◆ The drive is in the robotic library that contains the media.
- ◆ The drive allows the requested media density.

The robotic process is managing the drives and requests for drives in the robotic library that contains the requested media. The process (for example, `t1dd`) does the following:



- ◆ Determines which of the drives are currently available. Some of the things that are checked to determine drive availability follow. Is the drive
 - Configured as DOWN?
 - Already assigned?
 - Of a compatible type?
 - Reserved by another host?
- ◆ Picks the drive that was used least recently.

The time stamp used by drive selection is contained in robotic process memory. If the process is stopped and restarted, everything starts out equal again. The first drive as shown by `tpconfig -d` in the drive configuration will be used first, then the second, and so on. This time stamp is based on the dismount time, *not* the mount time.

Administrators Quick Reference

The following tables provide a quick reference to information that you will frequently use while using Media Manager.

Media Manager Commands

See “Media Manager Commands and Processes” on page 161 for detailed information on most of the commands shown in the following table.

Note Services should be started and stopped using the **Services** applet in the Windows control panel. If they are started from the command line, some will occupy that NetBackup Console session until they are stopped.

The commands listed are located in `install_path\volmgr\bin`.

Commands

Command	Description
---------	-------------

Administrator Utilities

<code>robtest</code>	Starts the robotic test utilities. NOTE: This utility is not officially supported.
----------------------	---

Starting Services and Processes



Commands (continued)

Command	Description
<code>avrd</code>	The Automatic Volume Recognition process. This process is started by <code>ltid</code> .
<code>ltid</code>	Starts the NetBackup Device Manager service. Starting <code>ltid</code> also starts the robotic, robotic control, and Media Manager volume (<code>avrd</code>) processes.
<code>t14d</code>	The Tape Library 4MM robotic process. This process is started by <code>ltid</code> .
<code>t18cd</code>	Starts the Tape Library 8MM robotic-control process. This process is started by <code>ltid</code> .
<code>t18d</code>	The Tape Library 8MM robotic process. This process is started by <code>ltid</code> .
<code>t1dcd</code>	Starts the Tape Library DLT robotic-control process. This process is started by <code>ltid</code> .
<code>t1dd</code>	The Tape Library DLT robotic process. This process is started by <code>ltid</code> .
<code>ts8d</code>	The Tape Stacker 8MM robotic process. This process is started by <code>ltid</code> .
<code>tsdd</code>	The Tape Stacker DLT robotic process. This process is started by <code>ltid</code> .
<code>vmd</code>	The NetBackup Volume Manager service. This process is started by <code>ltid</code> .

Stopping Services and Processes

<code>stopltid</code>	Stops the device, robotic, and robotic-control services.
<code>t1dcd -t</code>	Stops the Tape Library DLT robotic-control process.
<code>t18cd -t</code>	Stops the Tape Library 8MM robotic-control process.

Log Files

The following table contains descriptions of important Media Manager log files.

Logs

Log File	Description
Event Viewer	Contains general Media Manager logging, including errors.



 Logs (continued)

Log File	Description
daemon/ <i>ddmmyy</i> .log	Contains debug information for the NetBackup Volume Manager service (vmd) and its associated processes (oprdr and rdevmi). The path is <i>install_path</i> \volmgr\debug\daemon.
reqlib/ <i>ddmmyy</i> .log	Contains debug information on the processes that request vmd. The path is <i>install_path</i> \volmgr\debug\reqlib.
tpcommand/ <i>ddmmyy</i> .log	Contains debug information for device configuration. Includes information for tpconfig, tpautoconf, and the NetBackup GUIs. The path is <i>install_path</i> \volmgr\debug\tpcommand.
ltid/ <i>ddmmyy</i> .log	Contains debug information for ltid, the NetBackup Device Manager service. The path is <i>install_path</i> \volmgr\debug\ltid.

Media Manager Configuration File (vm.conf)

The *install_path*\volmgr\vm.conf file contains entries for media and device management. This file usually is created by NetBackup, but if it does not exist you need to create it to add entries.

The entries that this file can contain are as follows. See “Example vm.conf File” on page 250 for an example configuration file.

Authorization Required

AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED

If this entry is specified, Media Manager and NetBackup utilities must have authorization to connect to vmd; or a SERVER entry must be present in the vm.conf file. This entry is recommended for maximum security.

If this entry is not specified, Media Manager and NetBackup utilities may connect to vmd without specific authorization, except in the case when a non-matching SERVER entry is present in vm.conf.

Backup Exec - Mapping Media Types

backup_exec_media_type = *netbackup_robot_number netbackup_media_type*



This entry maps Backup Exec media types to NetBackup media types and is used with the Backup Exec tape reader feature. This entry can be used when a NetBackup robot has different drives of a similar type configured.

For example in a Backup Exec configuration, you have a robot with two DLT drives. Both drives are considered to be DLT and all media in this robot have a media type of BE_DLT. You plan to move your Backup Exec media to be used with NetBackup.

In your NetBackup configuration, you have a different robot (robot 1) with two DLT drives. One drive is configured as DLT (Drive0) and the other drive is DLT3 (Drive1). The Backup Exec DLT media type can map to DLT or DLT3.

If a *backup_exec_media_type* entry is *not* specified, the Backup Exec media type will be mapped to the media type of the drive with the lowest index. Based on information not shown for this example, Drive0 is determined to have the lowest drive index. Drive0 is DLT, so Backup Exec media type DLT will be mapped to the NetBackup media type DLT. (This is equivalent to specifying `BE_DLT = 1 DLT`.)

If you do not want this default mapping, you can add a *backup_exec_media_type* entry to specify that for this robot, the Backup Exec DLT media type maps to the NetBackup DLT3 media type (`BE_DLT = 1 DLT3`).

backup_exec_media_type is the Backup Exec media type.

netbackup_robot_number is the NetBackup robot number. For standalone drives, the robot number must be -1. For example, `BE_DLT = -1 DLT`

netbackup_media_type is the NetBackup media type (see “Media Manager Media Types” on page 214).

Allowable and default mappings are as follows:

Backup Exec Media Type	NetBackup Media Type	Default Mapping
BE_8MM	8MM, 8MM2, 8MM3	8MM
BE_DLT	DLT, DLT2, DLT3	Media type of the drive with the lowest index
BE_HALF_INCH	HCART, HCART2, HCART3	Media type of the drive with the lowest index

Client Port Range

`CLIENT_PORT_WINDOW = start end`



Specifies the range of nonreserved ports on this computer that are used for connecting to `vmc` on other computers.

For example the following entry permits ports from 4800 through 5000:

```
CLIENT_PORT_WINDOW = 4800 5000
```

If you specify 0 for *start*, the operating system determines the nonreserved port to use. If you do not specify a `CLIENT_PORT_WINDOW` entry, the operating system determines the nonreserved port.

Days To Keep Debug Logs

```
DAYS_TO_KEEP_LOGS = days
```

Specifies the number of days to keep debug logs before `vmc` deletes them. 0 means that the logs are not deleted. The default is 0.

Disable Automatic Path Remapping

```
DISABLE_AUTO_PATH_CORRECTION
```

Disables automatic device path remapping. With this entry, the device configuration will remain unchanged when the NetBackup Device Manager service is started. This may result in the device configuration becoming out of sync with the host's view of devices following a reboot.

Disallow Non-NDMP Request on NDMP Drive

```
DISALLOW_NONNDMP_ON_NDMP_DRIVE
```

In NetBackup, all read types of operations (restore, the read-portion of duplicates, import, and verify) and the write-portion of duplicates are not scheduled. Therefore these operations compete for available drives.

NetBackup attempts to use an available drive based on the type of request:

- ◆ For a NDMP backup or restore request, the drive must be a NDMP drive.
- ◆ For a non-NDMP request of any kind, NetBackup always tries to find an available non-NDMP drive. But, if a non-NDMP drive is not available and a NDMP drive is available, the operation will be done using the slower NDMP drive.

If a `DISALLOW_NONNDMP_ON_NDMP_DRIVE` entry is specified on master or media servers, NetBackup will *not* assign a non-NDMP request to available NDMP drives.



Be aware when specifying this entry, that because some operations may have to wait for available non-NDMP drives to become available, the media mount timeout value may have to be increased (by using an entry in the UNIX `bp.conf` file or in the registry on Windows).

Do Not Eject Standalone Tapes

`DO_NOT_EJECT_STANDALONE`

If this entry is specified, tapes in any standalone drives will not be ejected when a backup has completed (tapes will be ejected, if end of media is reached during a backup). This entry can be used in a NetBackup environment, where it is desirable to keep a standalone drive ready after successful backups are performed.

The `NO_STANDALONE_UNLOAD` file is also used to control tape ejects in standalone drives. Refer to the appendices of the NetBackup system administrator's guides for Windows servers for more information about this file.

Media ID Generation

`MEDIA_ID_BARCODE_CHARS = robot_num barcode_length media_ID_rule`

Note To use this entry, the robot must support barcodes and the robot type cannot be RSM.

This entry controls Media Manager media ID generation. You choose how IDs are created by defining rules that specify which characters of a barcode on tape will be used. You also can specify alphanumeric characters to be inserted in the ID.

Multiple barcode creation entries can be specified, allowing the media ID generation to be specific for each robot; or for each barcode format having different numbers of characters in the barcode. This allows flexibility for multi-media.

If `MEDIA_ID_BARCODE_CHARS` entries are not present or you enter an invalid entry, Media Manager uses the rightmost six characters of the barcode to create its media ID.

robot_num is the robot number.

barcode_length is the length of the barcode.

A *media_ID_rule* consists of a maximum of six fields delimited by colons. Numbers in the fields of the rule define the positions of the characters in the barcode that are to be extracted (numbering is from the left). For example, 2 in a field extracts the second character from the barcode. The numbers can be specified in any order.

Characters prefixed by # in a field result in that character being inserted in that position in the generated ID. Any alphanumeric characters that are specified must be valid for a media ID. You can use rules to create media IDs of many varied formats, but keep in mind that the difference in the label on the media and the generated media ID may make it difficult to manage your media. The following is an example rule and the resulting media ID:

```
Barcode on the tape: 032945L1
Media ID rule:      #N:2:3:4:5:6
Generated media ID: N32945
```

Also see “Media ID Generation Rules” on page 236.

Media ID Prefix

```
MEDIA_ID_PREFIX = media_id_prefix
```

Defines the media ID prefixes to use for media without barcodes. You add the media to a robot with Update Volume Configuration option.

See “Changing the Update Options” on page 101.

Preferred Group

```
PREFERRED_GROUP = netgroup_name
```

This entry is used by all callers in Media Manager and NetBackup (other than `bpgetmedia` and `bptm`) for authentication/authorization for `vmd`. *netgroup_name* is case sensitive.

If this entry is specified, a check is made to determine if the user is a member of `domain\group`. This check is limited to Windows global groups. If `PREFERRED_GROUP` is set to a domain local group, a match does not occur and the user's primary `domain\group` is used.

If a `PREFERRED_GROUP` entry is not specified or the user is not a member of the `domain\group`, the user's primary `domain\group` is obtained. If the domain name is an empty string or the name of the local machine, it is considered to be local.

If a `PREFERRED_GROUP` entry is not specified, the `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\VERITAS\NetBackup\CurrentVersion\Config` registry key is checked for an entry.

To achieve a platform independent implementation, *netgroup_name* is case sensitive. The following is an example entry:

```
PREFERRED_GROUP = NTDOMAINNAME\Backup Operators
```



Prevent Media Removal (TL8 Robots)

`PREVENT_MEDIA_REMOVAL`

Note Specifying this entry changes the default operation for TL8 robots. Without this entry present, Media Manager allows the removal of media.

If this entry is specified, TL8 robots will execute the SCSI command `PREVENT_MEDIUM_REMOVAL`. You then will not be able to open the robot's main door or gain access to the media access port while the robotic control daemon is running. You can override this action by doing one of the following:

- ◆ Use the test utility and execute `allow media removal`.
- ◆ Use `inject/eject` for access, when adding or moving volumes.

Random Port Numbers

`RANDOM_PORTS = YES|NO`

Specifies whether Media Manager chooses port numbers randomly or sequentially when it requires a port number for communication with Media Manager on other computers.

- ◆ If `RANDOM_PORTS = YES` (the default), Media Manager chooses port numbers randomly from those that are free in the allowed range. For example, if the range is from 1024 through 5000, Media Manager chooses randomly from the numbers in this range.
- ◆ If `RANDOM_PORTS = NO`, Media Manager chooses numbers sequentially, starting with highest number that is available in the allowed range. For example, if the range is from 1024 through 5000, Media Manager chooses 5000 (assuming it is free). If 5000 is being used, port 4999 is chosen.

By default, a `RANDOM_PORTS` entry is not present in the Media Manager configuration file. This means that Media Manager uses the random method for selecting port numbers.

If you are specifying `RANDOM_PORTS = NO` in the NetBackup configuration file, you should also specify `RANDOM_PORTS = NO` in the Media Manager configuration file.

Required Network Interface

`REQUIRED_INTERFACE = host_name`



Specifies the network interface that Media Manager uses when connecting to another Media Manager server. A Media Manager server can have more than one network interface and by default, the operating system determines the one to use. To force Media Manager connections to be through a specific network interface, use this entry and specify the network host name of that interface.

In the following example, `host1` is the network host name of the interface.

```
REQUIRED_INTERFACE = host1
```

Refer to the NetBackup system administrator's guide for more information on NetBackup network configuration.

RSM Media Mapping

`RSM_mediatype`

Maps Windows 2000 Removable Storage Manager (RSM) media types to Media Manager media types.

See the appendix, "Microsoft Removable Storage Manager (RSM)" on page 269 for more information.

Scratch Pool Configuration

`SCRATCH_POOL = pool_name`

Configures the specified volume pool as the scratch pool. The scratch pool is a special volume pool from which media is moved as needed into volume pools that have no available media.

You can specify any scratch pool name, except the names: NetBackup, DataStore, or None. If the specified volume pool does not exist, Media Manager creates it and sets the host, user, group, and description for the pool to ANYHOST, root, NONE, and Scratch Pool, respectively.

If you subsequently delete the `SCRATCH_POOL` entry, the specified volume pool will no longer be the scratch pool.

See "Adding a New Volume Pool or Scratch Volume Pool" on page 56.

Server Entry

`SERVER = host_name`



This entry is used for security and specifies which hosts can monitor and control devices on this host. Without any `SERVER` entries and authentication enabled, any host can manage the devices and volumes on the local host.

For security you can add entries allowing only specific hosts to remotely access the devices. If a host's `vm.conf` file contains any `SERVER` entries, there must also be a `SERVER` entry for that host or it will not be able to manage its own devices.

Verbose Message Logging

`VERBOSE`

Causes most Media Manager processes to be started with verbose logging enabled.

Use this option only if problems occur or if requested by VERITAS support. After the problem is resolved, remove any debug logs that were created or add a `DAYS_TO_KEEP_LOGS` entry.

Example vm.conf File

The following is an example of a `vm.conf` file, on host yak:

```
SERVER = yak
SERVER = whale
MEDIA_ID_PREFIX = NV
MEDIA_ID_PREFIX = NETB
SCRATCH_POOL = ScratchPool
```

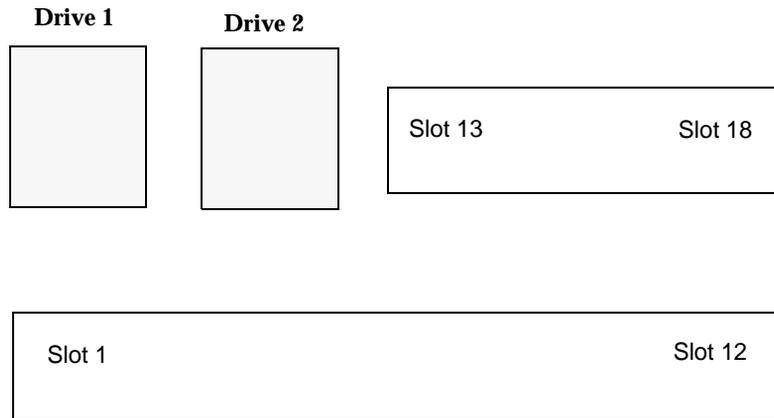
Robot Drive and Slot Layouts

C

This appendix contains diagrams of slot layouts and drive locations in some of the more popular robots supported by Media Manager. If your robot is not included here, see the vendor's documentation for the device.

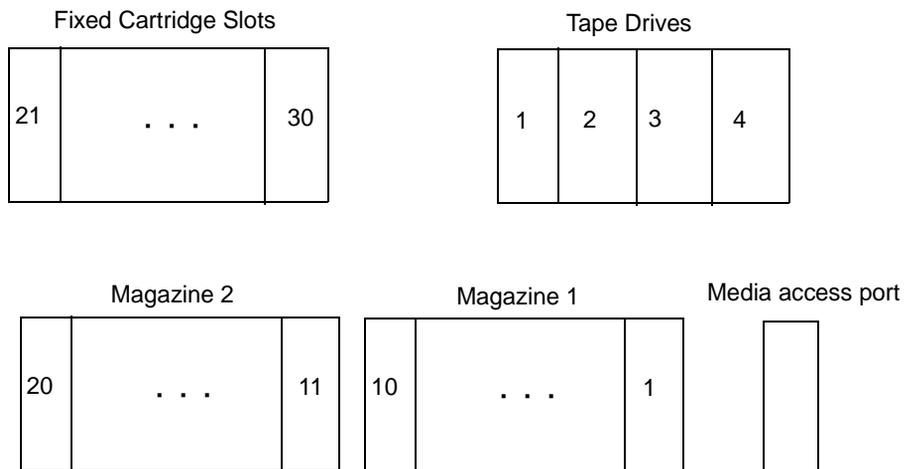


ADIC Scalar 218 (TLD)

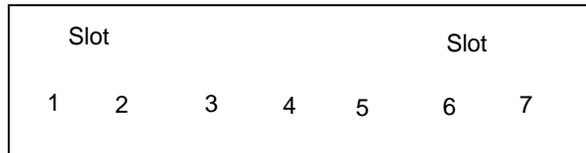


Note With a barcode reader installed, the slot physically labeled as slot 1 is disabled, and physical slots 2 through 18 become known in Media Manager as slots 1 through 17. With a virtual media access port configured, physical slot 12 becomes the port and physical slots 2-11 and 13-18 become known in Media Manager as slots 1-16.

Exabyte 430 Sony LIB-304 (TL8)

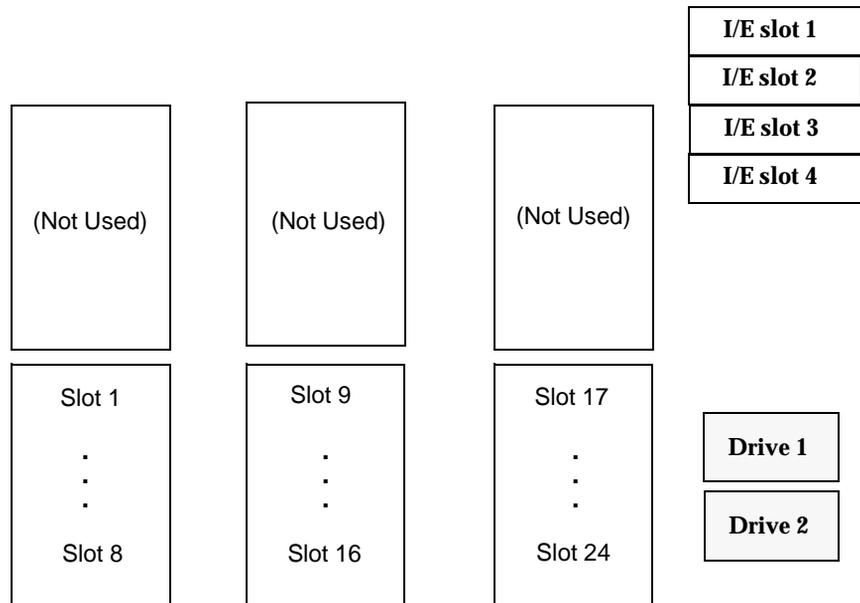


ADIC VLS DLT (TSD)



Drive 1 (the only drive)

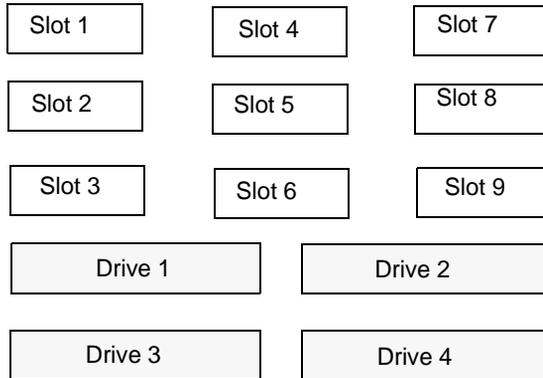
ATL 2/28 DLT Library (TLD)



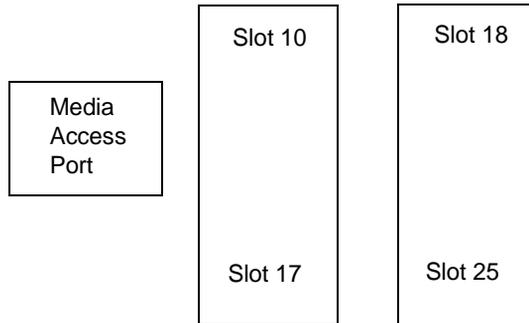
ATL P1000 Sun StorEdge L1000 (TLD)

The slot mapping shown below apply to libraries that are configured with 25 slots. Other configurations may vary.

Back (Inside view of back wall from the front)



Front (Inside view of front wall from the back)

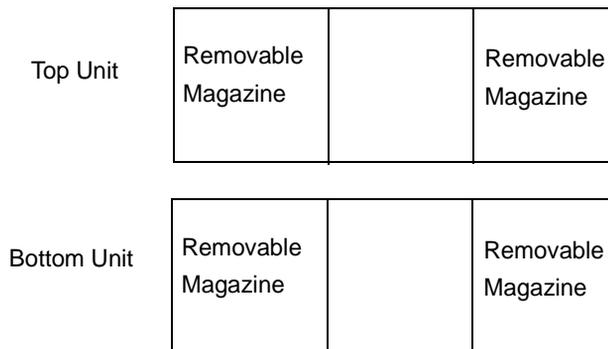


ATL M1500

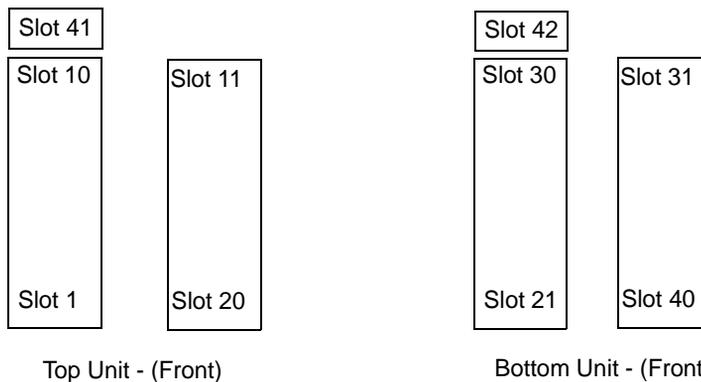
M4 Data M1500 (TLD)

The slot mapping below shows a robot with two units, each unit having two removable magazines. For NetBackup BusinessServer, only a single unit is allowed and the fixed slot is 21.

Front View

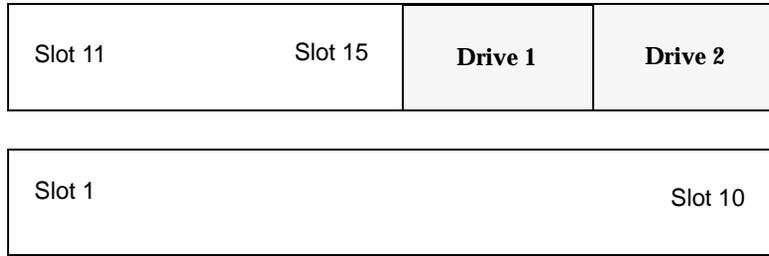


Top View of Magazines

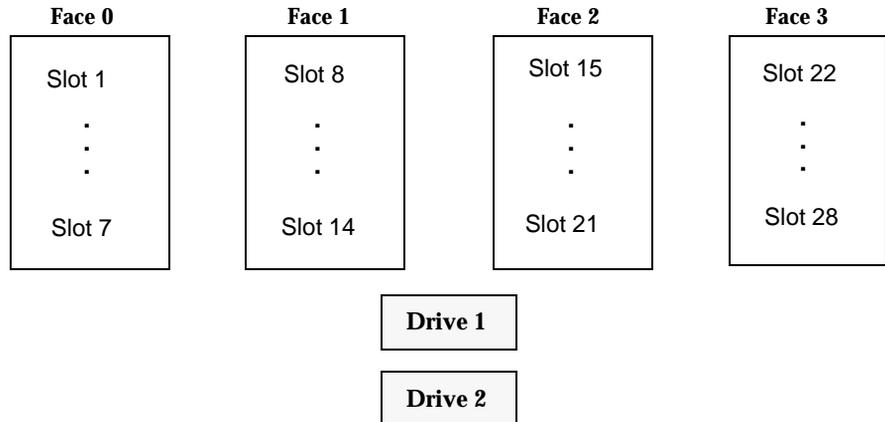


Breece Hill Q2.15 IBM 7337-305 IBM 3447-105 (TLD)

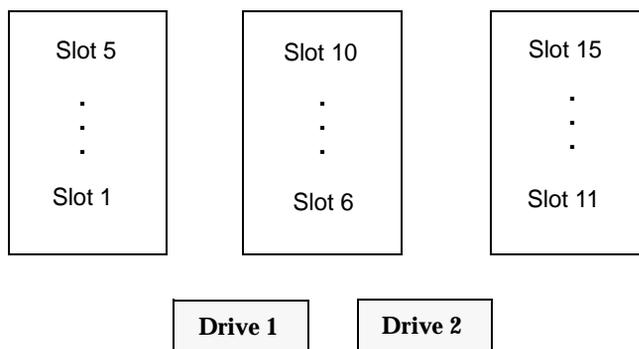
(Top View)



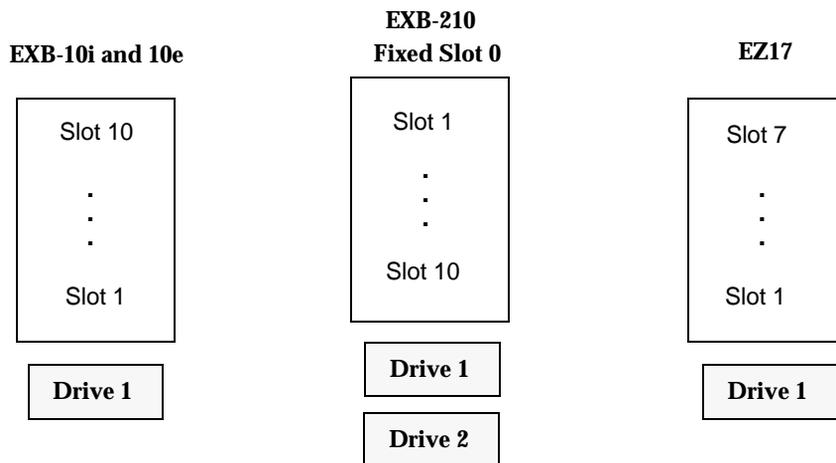
Breece Hill Q7 (TLD)



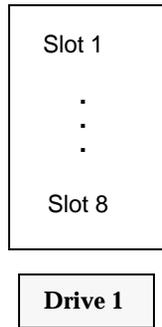
Compaq 35/70 (TLD)



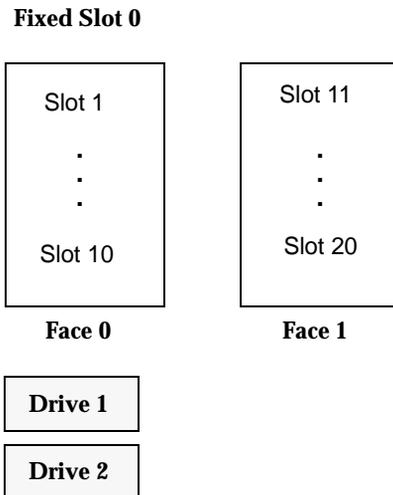
Exabyte 10i, 10e, 10h Exabyte 210 Exabyte EZ17 (TS8)



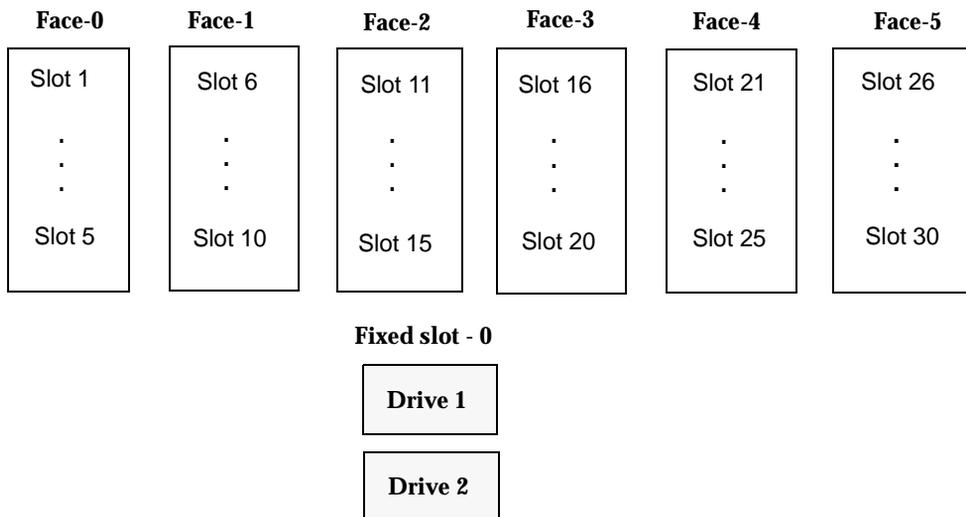
Exabyte 18D (TLD)



Exabyte 220 ADIC Scalar AIT 220 Sun StorEdge L400 (TL8)

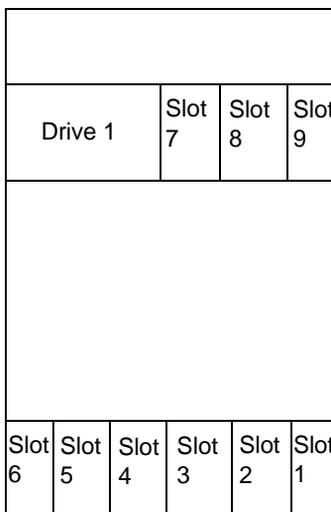


Exabyte 230D (TLD)

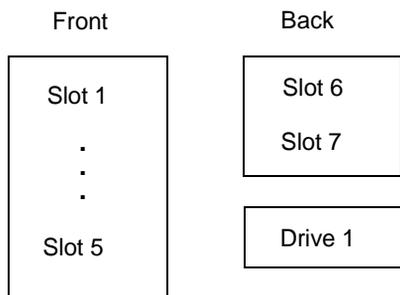


HP SureStore 1/9 Sun StorEdge L9 (TLD)

This is a top view of the robot.

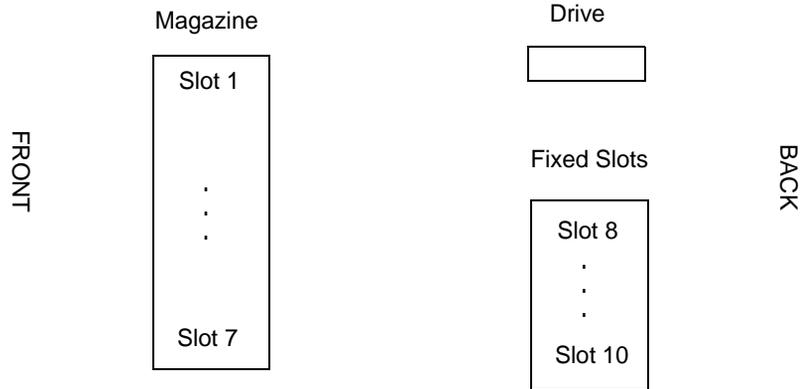


ADIC Fastor (TLD)

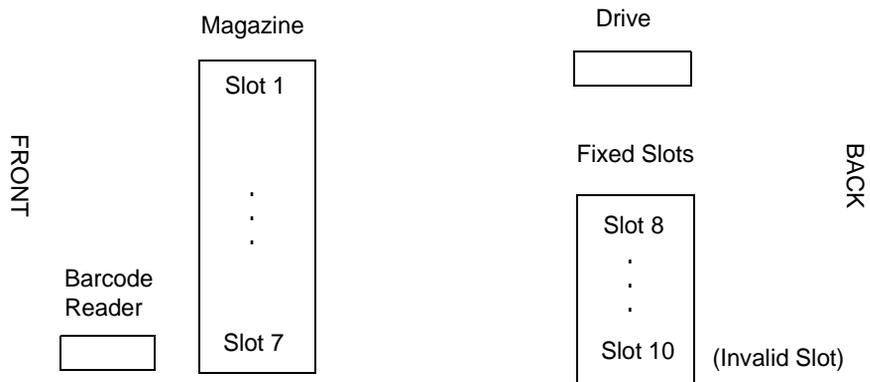


NEC Autoloader DLT (TLD)

The following diagram shows a standard model.

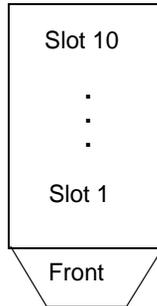


The following diagram shows a model with a barcode reader.



Overland Data LXBx110
Overland Data LXBx210
Compaq TL891
Compaq TL892 (TLD)

(Tape Holder)

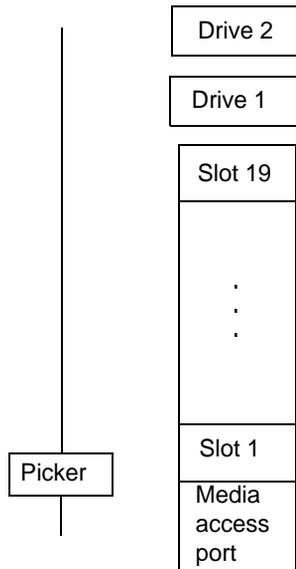


(LXBx210 has two drives inside)

(LXBx110 has one drive inside)

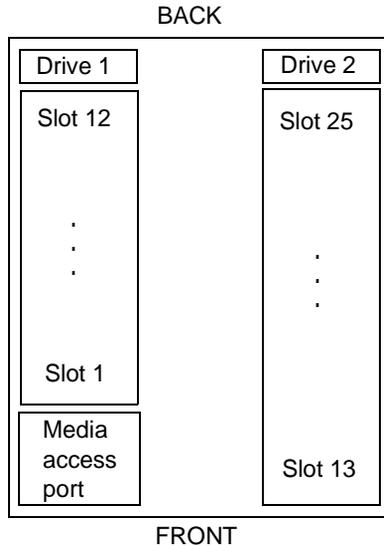
Overland Data Library Pro (TL8)

The following is the top view.

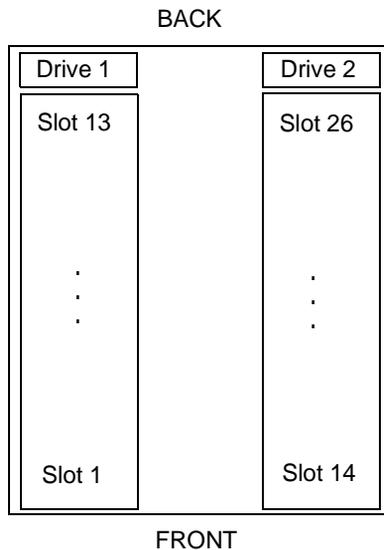


Overland Data NEO Overland Data LxL1u11 (TLD)

The following diagram shows a robot with the media access port enabled.

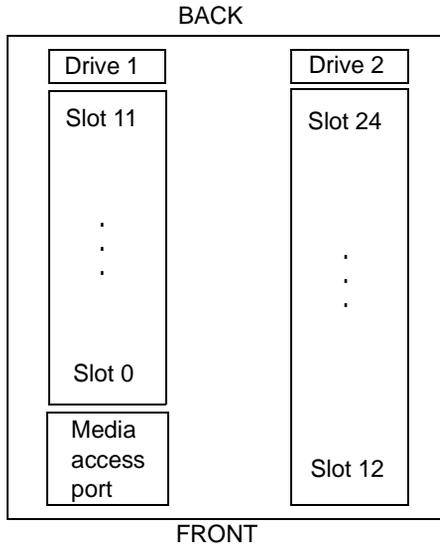


The following diagram shows a robot with the media access port disabled and is also similar to the LxL1u11 model which only supports one drive and 11 slots.

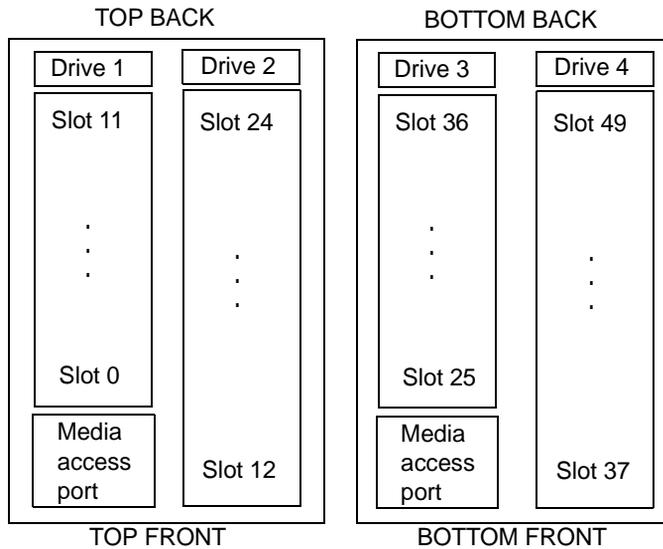


Compaq Storage Works MSL 5026 Compaq Storage Works MSL 5052 (TLD)

The following diagram shows a 5026 robot model.

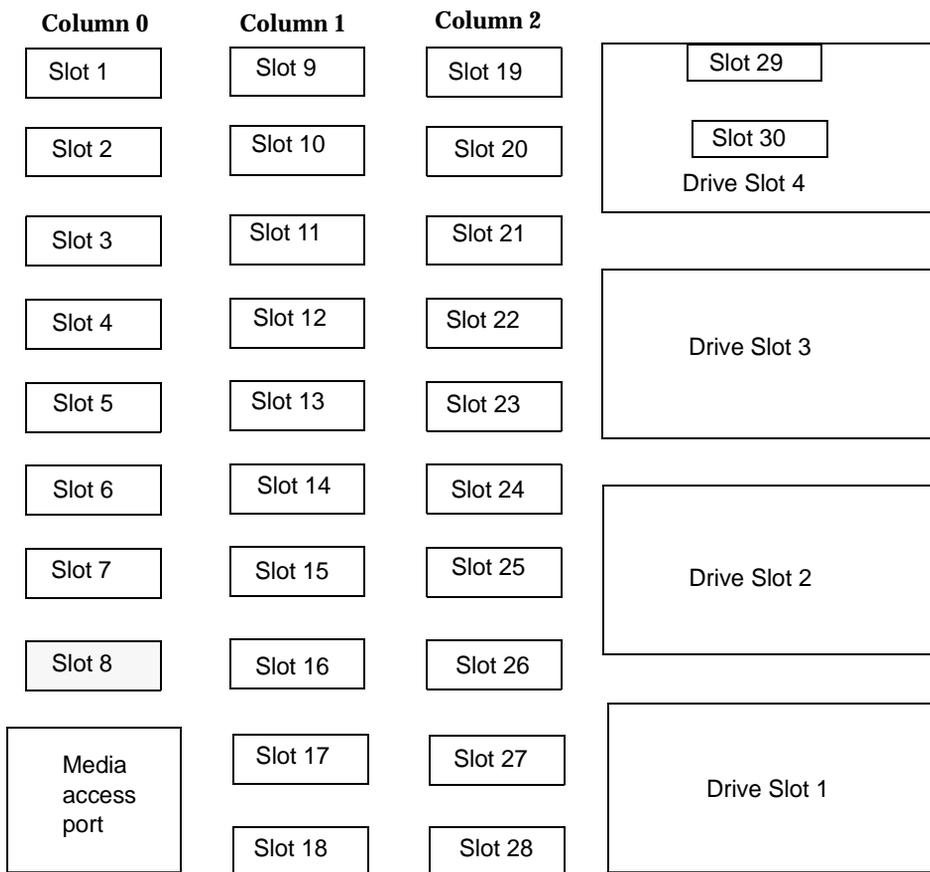


The following diagram shows a 5052 robot model.



STK 9730 STK 9738 DELL 130T HP SureStore E 3/30 (A4853A) (TLD)

If auto cleaning is set, slots 9 through 30 (or 9 through 28) become slots 8 through 29 (or 8 through 27). The slot labeled below as slot 8 becomes reserved for library use (for a cleaning tape). Other configurations may vary.



Drives	Cartridges	MAP
1-4	28 or 30	1

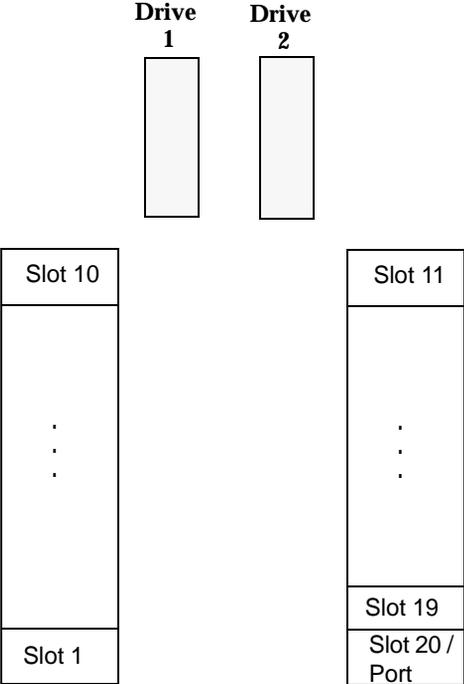
 Represents a cleaning cartridge cell if auto clean is enabled

Note: If a drive is not installed in slot 3, additional storage cells can be



STK L20 NCR 6461 (TLD)

If the media access port is turned on in the configuration, slot 20 becomes the media access port and is unusable for storage.





Microsoft Removable Storage Manager (RSM)

D

Media Manager provides support for robotics under control of the Microsoft Windows 2000 Removable Storage Manager (RSM) interface.

In Media Manager, RSM-attached robotic devices are

- ◆ Classified as Media Manager robot type RSM
- ◆ Considered API robots (the robot manages its own media)

Support for these devices is different than for other types of Media Manager robotic control. This appendix provides an overview of those differences.

Media Manager and Microsoft RSM

Microsoft RSM presents a common interface to devices that are RSM-compatible and attached to a Windows 2000 server. Media Manager supports the changer library devices listed on the Microsoft web site that contain drives that are shown in the supported drives list on the VERITAS support web site. Many of these devices vary in their support of features like barcodes and tape cleaning (tape cleaning is supported using the RSM applet see “Microsoft RSM Interface” on page 270).

Microsoft *RSM Libraries* represent physical layouts of the system (for example, robots and drives) and *RSM Media Pools* represent a logical layout of RSM media.

Media Manager *libraries* represent an individual changer, silo, robot, and so on. Also, Media Manager uses *Volume Pool* for a logical grouping of media (for example, all tapes currently available for backups) and *Volume Group* for a physical grouping of media (for example, all the tapes in a specific robot).

Because the devices and media are directly managed by Microsoft RSM, the Media Manager RSM process (`rsmd`) must always be running to configure media in Media Manager.

Considerations When Using Microsoft RSM

Before you configure a robot as an RSM robot, consider the following:



- ◆ Your Media Manager device host must be running Windows 2000.
- ◆ Microsoft Removable Storage Manager will control the robot and drives, rather than Media Manager.
- ◆ Media Manager library sharing and standalone drives are not supported.
- ◆ A robot configured as an RSM robot, cannot also be used as a Media Manager direct-controlled (SCSI) robot (for example, TLD).
- ◆ RSM libraries could potentially be used by other applications.

Microsoft RSM Interface

You use the Microsoft Removable Storage Manager to configure and manage your RSM media and devices. This interface is located in the **Computer Management** applet under the **Administrative Tools** folder in the **Start** menu. Documentation on how to use this interface is provided by Microsoft.

Media Requests Involving an RSM Robot

A request for media in an RSM robot begins in the same manner as other media requests. The NetBackup Device Manager service (`ltid`) receives the request and queries the NetBackup Volume Manager service (`vmd`) for the location of the media. `vmd`, in this case, returns only the robot number and the type RSM for the robot.

Since Microsoft RSM manages the media and slots in RSM robots, the Media Manager volume database does not contain slot information for media in an RSM robot.

`ltid` then queries the volume database to retrieve the identifier (GUID or Globally Unique ID) assigned by RSM. `ltid` sends this information, along with the media name to the Media Manager RSM process (`rsmd`).

`rsmd` forwards the request to the Microsoft RSM software (the Removable Storage service running in Windows 2000). The Removable Storage service locates the media and directs the robotics to mount the media in the drive. When the host (where Media Manager is installed) receives a success response from the Removable Storage service, it allows the requesting application (for example, NetBackup) to start sending data to the drive.

Configuring RSM Robotic Control

Before adding any devices, it is important to verify that the Removable Storage service is aware of your device. Use the Removable Storage Manager applet (see “Microsoft RSM Interface” on page 270) to verify this.



Adding RSM-attached robots is similar to adding any robot in Windows 2000. But instead of specifying the corresponding robot type for the device, you specify RSM as the Media Manager robot type. See “Adding Robots” on page 27 for information on configuring RSM robots.

As an alternative to using the **Devices** node of the NetBackup Administration Console, the following example uses the `tpconfig` command to configure an RSM robot:

```
tpconfig -add -robot 123 -roptype rsm -robpath changer0
```

The command returns:

```
Added robot number 123 of type RSM to configuration
```

Configuring RSM Drives in Media Manager

Before configuring any device make sure that the Removable Storage service is aware of your device, by using the Removable Storage Manager applet (see “Microsoft RSM Interface” on page 270). Also, in order to configure an RSM drive, first configure the corresponding robot and be sure to specify this robot when configuring the drive.

Configuring a drive is similar to configuring any other drive on a Windows 2000 device host. See “Adding Drives” on page 33 for information on configuring RSM drives.

As an alternative to using the **Devices** node of the NetBackup Administration Console, the following example uses the `tpconfig` command to configure an RSM drive:

```
tpconfig -add -drive -type dlt -name Tape0 -robot 123 -roptype rsm
                                             -robdrnum 1
```

The command returns:

```
added drive index 0 of type dlt to configuration
```

Verifying a Configuration

You can use the `tpconfig -d` command to verify your configuration, which displays results similar to the following:

Index	DriveName	DeviceName	Type	Multihost	Status
0	Drive0	\\.\Tape0	dlt	NO	UP
	RSM(123) Definition	DRIVE=1			

Currently defined robotics are:

```
RSM(123)   RSM Device Name = \\.\Changer0,
           volume database host = host5
```



Activating a Configuration

If your changes are complete, stop and restart the NetBackup Device Manager service (this also stops and restarts any robotic processes).

1. Stop the NetBackup Device Manager service using **Stop/Restart Device Manager Service**, found on the **Actions** menu of the **Devices** node of the NetBackup Administration Console.
2. Start the NetBackup Device Manager service using **Stop/Restart Device Manager Service**.

Adding RSM Volumes

Because the devices and media are directly managed by Microsoft RSM, RSM keeps track of volumes using its own database.

The method for adding media for an RSM robot is as follows:

1. Use the Microsoft RSM applet (see “Microsoft RSM Interface” on page 270) to move volumes from the Free Media Pool (the default media pool) to the NetBackup Media Pool. All volume activity (for example, mounts or dismounts) is through the NetBackup Media Pool.

Media names have to be unique within the Microsoft RSM library, even among different media types. For Media Manager to recognize media names they should be on both the Media Name and Side Name in the Microsoft RSM property sheet for the media.

The media ID used in the Media Manager volume database is the last six characters of the RSM media name. Therefore, two volumes with RSM media names of A000001 and B000001 are *not* considered to be unique by Media Manager.

If the last six characters of the RSM media name contain spaces, only the characters back to the first space are used. For example, for an RSM media name of AA BBB CCCC, the Media Manager media ID will be CCCC.

2. Since RSM volumes are tracked by their physical and partition GUIDs, volumes that are added must be located in the RSM database to capture their GUIDs. Therefore volumes added by Media Manager have to exist within the RSM NetBackup Media Pool for that robot.

Define the volumes for Media Manager using one of the following procedures:

- Update the volume configuration as explained in “Updating the Volume Configuration for a Robot” on page 97.



- Add new volumes as explained in “Adding New Volumes” on page 63.

Update the configuration when media has been moved or may have moved residences (see “Removing Tapes from the Robot” on page 273).

3. Use **Show Contents** and **Compare Contents with Volume Configuration** from the Robot Inventory dialog of the **Media** node to verify your configuration.
4. The NetBackup “Allow media overwrite” setting must allow overwrite on MTF1 (this is necessary because Free Media Labels are in MTF format). To set this,
 - a. From the NetBackup Administration Console, click the **Host Properties** node.
 - b. In the Host Properties window select the media server and click **Actions > Properties**.
 - c. On the **Media** tab in the dialog box that appears, select the **MTF1** setting.

Removing Tapes from the Robot

1. Use the Media Manager eject command, as explained in “Moving Volumes” on page 73 to remove the media from the RSM library.
2. Remove the media from the library as directed by the Removable Storage Manager interface. RSM moves volumes that have been ejected to the Off-line Media library. Media Manager moves the volume to standalone in the Media Manager volume database. Media Manager also moves the volume to the RSM NetBackup Standalone Media media pool.

Robot Inventory Operations

Media Manager considers an RSM robot as one that supports barcodes. The following sequence explains what occurs when you select an operation that requires a robotic inventory for an RSM robot:

1. Media Manager requests volume information from the Removable Storage service.
2. The Removable Storage service responds by providing a list of media names and associated information from its database. Media Manager then displays a list of volumes obtained from the service along with their RSM and Media Manager media types.



The following table indicates an example of information displayed by Media Manager:

Example RSM Information

RSM Media Name	Robot Contents RSM Media Type	Robot Contents Media Manager Media Type
MC120	AIT1_8mm	8mm
NN0402	DDS_4mm	4mm
002455	MP2_8mm	8mm

3. Media Manager maps the RSM media types into Media Manager media types, as explained in step 4 or step 5.
4. If this is an operation that does not require updating the volume configuration, Media Manager uses the media type defaults for RSM robots (see the table, “Default Media Types for RSM Robots” on page 111) when it creates its report.
5. If this is an operation that requires updating the volume configuration, Media Manager selects the media type as follows:
 - a. Media Manager tries to use mappings that you have set for this update using the Media Type Mappings dialog box (to access this dialog box, click **Media type mappings** in the Update Options dialog box). See “Changing the Update Options” on page 101.
 - b. If you have not set any media type mappings, Media Manager tries to use the `RSM_mediatype` settings in the `vm.conf` file (see “vm.conf Map Entries For RSM Robots” on page 274).
 - c. If `vm.conf` does not exist or if it does not map the media type, Media Manager uses the default for RSM robots (see the table, “Default and Allowable RSM Media Types” on page 275).

vm.conf Map Entries For RSM Robots

See “Media Manager Configuration File (vm.conf)” on page 243 for an overview of the `vm.conf` file.



The second column in the following table shows the defaults that Media Manager uses when assigning media types in RSM robots. The third column shows the media types to which you can change the defaults, by creating map entries in `vm.conf`.

Default and Allowable RSM Media Types

RSM Media Type	Default Media Manager Media Type	Allowable Media Types Through Mappings
DDS_4MM	4MM	4MM
MINI_QIC	QCART (1/4-inch cartridge)	QCART
TRAVAN	QCART	QCART
QIC	QCART	QCART
MP_8MM	8MM	8MM
MP2_8MM	8MM	8MM
AME_8MM	8MM	8MM
AIT1_8MM	8MM	8MM
DLT	DLT	DLT
STK_EAGLE	HCART (1/2-inch cartridge)	HCART
LTO_ULTRIUM	HCART	HCART
LTO_ACCELIS	HCART	HCART
IBM_MAGSTAR_3590	HCART	HCART
IBM_MAGSTAR_MP	HCART	HCART
STK_DATA_D3	HCART	HCART
CLEANER_CARTRIDGE	HC_CLN (1/2-inch cartridge)	HC_CLN, 8MM_CLN, DLT_CLN
UNKNOWN	HCART	HCART, 4MM, 8MM, QCART, DLT



If the default types do not provide the desired mapping, you can change the defaults by creating a `vm.conf` file and adding `RSM_mediatype` entries to it.

For example, the following `vm.conf` entry maps the RSM media type `unknown` to the `8MM` media type. Without this entry, Media Manager assigns `unknown` to `HCART` media types.

```
RSM_UNKNOWN = 8MM
```

The third column in the table shows the media types that Media Manager allows you to specify in `RSM_mediatype` entries. For example, you *cannot* specify the following entry. This entry is illegal because Media Manager does not permit you to map `RSM_UNKNOWN` to the `8MM` cleaning media type.

```
RSM_UNKNOWN = 8MM_CLN
```



Glossary

access control list (ACL)

Security information associated with files on some file systems.

ACS

Automated Cartridge System. ACS can refer to any of the following:

- ◆ A type of Media Manager robotic control. This robot type is supported only by NetBackup DataCenter servers.
- ◆ The StorageTek (STK) system for robotic control.
- ◆ The highest-level component under STK's ACS library software, which refers to a specific standalone robotic library or to multiple libraries connected with a media passthru mechanism.

active job

A job for which NetBackup is currently processing backup or restore data.

activity logs

See “debug logs.”

activity monitor

A NetBackup administration utility that displays information about NetBackup jobs and provides limited control over them.

administration client

See “remote administration console.”

administrator

A user that is granted special privileges to install, configure, and manage the operation of a system, network, or application.



AIT

Sony Advanced Intelligent Tape, a type of tape drive or media type.

alternate-client restore

See “redirected restore (different client).”

alternate-target restore

See “redirected restore (different target).”

alternate path restore

See “redirected restore (different path).”

alternate read server

A server used to read a backup image which was originally written by a different media server. The media server specified as Alternate Read Server must have access to the media containing the backup image or images it is configured to read.

archive

A special kind of backup where NetBackup backs up the selected files, and if the backup is successful, deletes the files from the local disk. In this manual, references to backups also apply to the backup portion of archive operations except where otherwise noted.

archive bit

A file-status bit that the Microsoft based operating system sets when it writes a file, thereby indicating that the file has changed.

attributes for a policy

Configuration parameters that control the behavior of NetBackup during operations involving this policy.

autochanger

See “robotic library.”

autoloader

See “robotic library.”

automatic backup

A scheduled backup by the master server.



back up

The act of copying and saving files and folders to storage media.

backup

Refers to the process of copying and saving files and directories to storage media. For example, *the backup is complete*. This term can also refer to the collection of data that NetBackup saves for a client during a backup or archive. For example, *duplicate the backup*.

Backup is two words when used as a verb. For example, *back up the file*.

backup, archive, and restore interface

The name of the NetBackup Microsoft Windows and Java based user interfaces for clients. On servers these interfaces can be started through the NetBackup Administration Console.

backup window

The period of time during which backups can begin.

block size

The number of bytes in each block of data written on the media during a backup.

bp

A backup, archive, and restore utility for users on NetBackup UNIX clients. It has a character-based, menu interface that can be run from terminals that do not have X Windows capabilities.

bpadm

An administrator utility that runs on NetBackup UNIX servers. It has a character-based, menu interface that can be run from terminals that do not have X Windows capabilities.

bp.conf file

A NetBackup configuration file on UNIX servers and also on UNIX, Macintosh, and OS/2 clients.

bp.ini file

NetBackup initialization file for Novell NetWare target clients.

bpcd

NetBackup Client service on Windows and the NetBackup Client daemon on UNIX.



bprd

NetBackup Request Manager service on Windows and NetBackup Request daemon on UNIX.

cancel a job

Terminating a job and removing it from the job queue.

carousel

See “robotic library.”

catalogs

Internal NetBackup and Media Manager databases. These catalogs contain information about configuration, media, devices, status, errors, and the files and directories in the stored backup images.

CDF

Context-dependent file, which is a type of directory structure on a Hewlett-Packard system.

changer

See “robotic library.”

class

See “policy.”

client

The system with the files to back up, archive, or restore.

client-user interface

See “user interface.”

cluster

See master and media server cluster.

command lines

Commands that users can execute either from the system prompt or in scripts.

compression

The process of compacting data to enable more efficient transmission and storage.



configuration

The parameters that govern the behavior of an application. This term can also refer to the manner in which a network or system is laid out or connected (for example, a network configuration).

consolidated eject

A process of ejecting media for more than one Vault session at a time. A Consolidated Eject can be performed for one or more logical vaults at one time.

consolidated report

A process of generating reports for more than one Vault session at a time. A Consolidated Report can be performed for one or more logical vaults at one time. Consolidated reports are organized by report title, not by vault.

cpio

A UNIX command that can be used for copying files to or from a cpio archive on disk or tape.

ctime

The time that a UNIX inode was changed.

cumulative-incremental backup

A backup that is scheduled by the administrator on the master server and backs up files that have changed since the last successful full backup. All files are backed up if no prior backup has been done. Also see “differential-incremental backup.”

daemon

A program on a UNIX system that runs in the background and performs some task (for example, starting other programs when they are needed). Daemons are generally referred to as services or processes on Windows server systems.

database-agent clients

Clients with additional NetBackup software that is designed to back up relational databases.

database-extension clients

See “database-agent clients.”



debug logs

Logs that can be optionally enabled for specific NetBackup and Media Manager programs and processes and then used to investigate problems.

destination storage unit

A storage unit to which Vault sends the data from a duplication operation. If the duplicated backup images are to be vaulted, then the destination storage unit must correspond to the robotic volume group.

device delays

Delays caused by the device that are beyond the control of the storage application. An example is the time required to position tape under the read and write heads.

device host

A host (that has Media Manager installed) where a drive or robotic control is attached or is defined.

device monitor

A Media Manager administration utility that provides monitoring and manual control of Media Manager storage devices. For example, an administrator or computer room operator can use this utility to manually reset devices or set them to the UP or DOWN state.

DHCP

Dynamic host configuration protocol. This TCP/IP protocol automatically assigns temporary IP addresses to hosts when they connect to the network.

differential-incremental backup

Scheduled by the administrator on the master server and backs up files that have changed since the last successful incremental or full backup. All files are backed up if no prior backup has been done. Also see “cumulative-incremental backup.”

directory depth

The number of levels below the current directory level that the NetBackup interfaces show in their directory and file list displays.

directory tree

The hierarchical structure in which files are organized on a disk. Each directory lists the files and directories that are directly below it in the tree. On UNIX, the topmost directory is called the root directory.



disaster recovery

Recovering data from backups after a disk crash or other catastrophe.

disk

Magnetic or optical disk storage media.

disk-image backup

A bit-by-bit rather than a file system backup of a disk drive on a Windows platform.

DLT

Digital-linear tape or tape drive type.

Domain Name Service (DNS)

A program that handles name translation for network communications.

drive cleaning

The use of a special cleaning tape to clean the heads on a drive.

duplicate image

A copy of a backup image.

eject

Move media out of a robotic library.

encryption

Provides additional security by encrypting backup data on the client. This capability is available only with the NetBackup Encryption option.

entry and exit ports

See “media access port.”

exclude list

A list that designates files or directories to exclude from automatic backups.

expiration (image)

The date and time when NetBackup stops tracking a backup image.



expiration (volume)

The date and time when the physical media (tape) is considered to be no longer usable.

external media ID

This is an identifier written on a media cartridge or canister to help the operator identify the volume before inserting it into a drive or robot. For labeled media, the external media ID should be the same as the media ID recorded on the media.

EVSN

See “external media ID.”

FlashBackup

A special type of raw-partition backup that requires the NetBackup FlashBackup separately-priced option (this option is available only for NetBackup DataCenter).

flush level

Controls how often Netbackup clears its log files on a Novell NetWare or Microsoft Windows client platform.

fragment

A part of a backup or archive image. NetBackup can be configured to divide images into fragments when they exceed a certain size or span tapes.

frequency (backup)

How often NetBackup performs scheduled backups. For example, if the frequency is seven days then backups occur once a week.

FROZEN media state

If a volume is FROZEN, NetBackup keeps it indefinitely and can restore from it but not use it for further backups or archives.

full backup

A backup that copies, to a storage unit, all files and directories that are beneath a specified directory.

FULL media state

If this appears in a report or listing, it indicates the volume is FULL and cannot hold more data or be used for further backups.



global attributes

NetBackup configuration attributes that affect all policies.

GDM Dashboard

The name for the Global Data Manager interface. The Dashboard enables monitoring job and drive activity on multiple master servers, as well as providing alerts to problem conditions.

GDM Managed Server

A NetBackup master server that appears as a managed master server in the left pane of the GDM Dashboard.

GDM Server

A NetBackup master server that has the Global Data Manager license activated. When logging into this host, the user can monitor the activity on multiple master servers using the GDM Dashboard interface. If the host has installed the Advanced Reporter option, the reports show information on multiple master servers.

Global Data Manager (GDM)

A separately-priced option (for UNIX servers) that provides an interface with a tree view where the administrator can view and administer multiple master servers. The server where the option is installed is called a GDM Server.

Global Device Database

A single host that serves as the repository for global device configuration information. When you install NetBackup, by default the master server is configured as the global device database host.

GNU tar

A public domain version of the UNIX tar program.

goodies directory

A directory containing programs, scripts, and other files that are not formally supported.

GUI

Graphical user interface.



hard link

On UNIX, a hard link is a pointer to the inode for the data. On a Windows server, a hard link is a directory entry for a file. Every file can be considered to have at least one hard link. On NTFS volumes each file can have multiple hard links, and a single file can appear in many directories (or even in the same directory with different names).

heap level

A parameter for memory-heap debugging on a Novell NetWare or Windows NetBackup client.

hierarchical storage management

The process of automatically migrating selected files from a managed file system to specified migration levels on secondary storage, while maintaining transparent access to those files.

host

A computer that executes application programs.

host name

Name by which a host computer is identified by programs and other computers in the network.

HSM

See storage migrator.

image

The collection of data that NetBackup saves for an individual client during each backup or archive. The image contains all the files, directories, and catalog information associated with the backup or archive.

import

The process of recreating NetBackup records of images so the images can be restored.

include list

A list that designates files or directories to add back in from the exclude list.

incremental backup

See “cumulative-incremental backup” and “differential-incremental backup.”



inject

Move media into a robotic library.

inport

See “media access port.”

inode

A UNIX data structure that defines the existence of a single file.

install_path

Directory where NetBackup and Media Manager software is installed. The default on Windows servers is `C:\Program Files\VERITAS` and on UNIX it is `/usr/opensv`.

jbpSA

The Java-based NetBackup interface for performing user backups, archives, and restores.

jnbSA

The Java-based NetBackup interface for administrators.

job

A parcel of work submitted to a computer. NetBackup jobs are backups, archives, or restores.

kernel

The nucleus of an operating system.

keyword phrase

A textual description of a backup.

kill a job

See “cancel a job.”

label

Identifier of a tape or optical disk volume. A recorded label includes a media ID. A barcode label allows a barcode scanner to be used for media tracking.

library

See “robotic library.”



link

See “hard link” or “symbolic link.”

LMF - Library Management Facility

A Media Manager designation for a category of robot. For the specific vendor types and models in this category, see the VERITAS support web site.

This robot type is supported only by NetBackup DataCenter servers.

load

(noun) Amount of work that is being performed by a system or the level of traffic on a network. For example, network load affects performance.

(verb) Copy data to internal memory. For example, load the installation program.

(verb) Used to indicate tape drive initialization done when new media is being added.

logs

Files where a computer or application records information about its activities.

mailslot

See “media access port.”

man pages

Online documentation provided with UNIX computer systems and applications.

Master and media server cluster

A NetBackup master server and the remote media servers that it is using for additional storage. It is possible to configure clusters only with NetBackup DataCenter servers. NetBackup BusinessServer supports only a single server, the master.

Master of Masters

A NetBackup host where Global Data Manager software is installed. When logging into this host, the interface has a tree view where the administrator can view and administer multiple master servers.

master server

The NetBackup server that provides administration and control for backups and restores for all clients and servers in a master and media server cluster. NetBackup BusinessServer supports only a single server and it is the master.



media

Physical magnetic tapes, optical disks, or magnetic disks where data are stored.

media access port

A slot or other opening in a robot where you can insert or remove a tape without having to access the interior of the robot. After inserting a tape, you move it to a slot by using an inject command. Prior to removing a tape, you move it to the port by using an eject command. The inject and eject commands are supported through the add and move screens in the Media Manager administration interface.

media host

NetBackup server to which the job (client) is sending the data.

media ID

An identifier that is written on a volume as part of the recorded label.

Media Manager

Software that is part of NetBackup and manages the storage devices and removable media.

Media Manager Host

Host where Media Manager is installed (may have devices attached).

media server

A NetBackup server that provides storage within a master and media server cluster. The master can also be a media server. A media server that is not the master is called a remote media server. NetBackup BusinessServer does not support remote media servers.

menu interface

A character-based interface for use on terminals that do not have graphical capabilities.

mount

Make a volume available for reading or writing.

mount point

The point where a file system on a disk logically connects to a system's directory structure so the file system is available to users and applications.



MPX

See “multiplexing.”

mtime

The point in time when a UNIX or NTFS file is modified.

multiplexing

The process of sending concurrent-multiple backups from one or more clients to a single storage device and interleaving those images onto the media.

multiplexed group

A set of backups that were multiplexed together in a single multiplexing session.

NDMP

Network data management protocol. NetBackup requires the NetBackup for NDMP separately-priced option to support NDMP.

NetBackup Client service

NetBackup Windows service that runs on clients and servers and listens for connections from NetBackup servers and clients in the network. When a connection is made, this service starts the necessary programs.

NetBackup configuration options

On UNIX servers and on UNIX and Macintosh, clients, these settings are made in the `bp.conf` file. On NetWare target and OS/2 clients, they are in the `bp.ini` file. On Windows servers and Windows clients, these settings are called properties and are made through the Backup, Archive, and Restore interface or the Host Properties dialog in the NetBackup Administration Console.

NetBackup databases

See catalogs.

NetBackup Database Manager service

NetBackup Windows service that runs on the master server and manages the NetBackup internal databases (called catalogs). This service must be running on the master server during all NetBackup administrative operations.



NetBackup Device Manager service

The NetBackup Windows service that runs on a NetBackup server and starts the robotic control processes and controls the reservation and assignment of volumes. This service runs only if the server has devices under Media Manager control. The process is `ltid`.

NetBackup properties

Same as NetBackup configuration options but are called NetBackup properties on Microsoft Windows platforms.

NetBackup Request Manager service

The NetBackup Windows service that runs on the master server and starts the scheduler and receives requests from clients.

NetBackup Volume Manager service

A NetBackup Windows service that runs on a NetBackup server, allows remote administration of Media Manager, and manages volume information. The process is `vmc`.

NIS

Network information service.

NLM

NetWare loadable module.

NFS

Network file system.

nonrobotic

See “standalone.”

ODL

Optical disk library. This robot type is supported only by NetBackup DataCenter servers.

offsite volume group

A volume group in which media will appear after having been ejected from the robot for vaulting. When Vault ejects media it is moved from the robotic volume group to the off-site volume group.



offsite volume pool

A volume pool that contains media that is to be ejected and vaulted. Backup images written to an off-site volume pool by an original NetBackup backup policy or by Vault's duplication feature will be ejected and vaulted. More than one off-site volume pool can be specified for the Eject step of a Vault profile.

original backup

A backup image created by a backup job. A single backup image or all backup images created by an Inline Tape Copy (multiple copy) configuration are considered original backups. A backup image created by a duplication job is not an original backup.

outport

See "media access port."

partitions

The logical partitions into which a magnetic disk is divided.

patch

A program that corrects a problem or adds a feature to an existing release of software.

path length

Number of characters in a pathname.

pathname

The list of directories in the path to a destination directory or file.

PC clients

NetBackup clients that have Microsoft Windows, Macintosh, or IBM OS/2 operating systems.

peername

The name by which a computer identifies itself when establishing connections to other systems.

policy

Defines the backup characteristics for a group of one or more clients that have similar backup requirements.



port

A location used for transferring data in or out of a computer.

Also see “media access port.”

primary copy

The copy of an image that NetBackup uses to satisfy restores. When NetBackup duplicates an image, the original is designated as the primary copy.

privileges

The tasks or functions that a user, system, or application is authorized to perform.

profile

A vault profile is a way to save configuration settings. Specific parameters for duplication, catalog backup, eject, and report or any combination of these steps, are configured within a profile.

progress report

Log where NetBackup records events that occur during user operations.

proxy restore

A proxy restore allows the user to restore files that he has write access to, on a machine other than his desktop. The files must be in a backup of the machine to which they are being restored.

QIC

Quarter-inch-cartridge tape.

queued job

A job that has been added to the list of jobs to be performed.

raw-partition backup

Bit-by-bit backup of a partition of a disk drive on UNIX. On Windows, this is called a disk-image backup.

rbak

The program that Apollo clients use to read data from tape during a restore.



recorded media ID

This is an identifier written as part of the label on a volume and used by Media Manager to ensure that the correct volume is mounted. The recorded media ID should match the external media ID.

redirected restore (different client)

Restoring files to your client when they were originally backed up from a different client. The administrator using the interface on the master server can direct a restore to any client (this variation is called a server directed restore).

redirected restore (different target)

On a Novell NetWare server platform running the NetBackup target version of client software, this operation restores files to a different target than the one from which they were backed up.

redirected restore (different path)

Restores files to a different directory than the one from which they were backed up.

registry

A Microsoft Windows database that has configuration information about hardware and user accounts.

remote administration console

A Windows NetBackup client that has the administration interface software installed and can be used to administer NetBackup servers.

remote media server

A media server that is not the master. Note that only NetBackup DataCenter supports remote media servers. NetBackup BusinessServer supports only a single server, the master.

residence

In Media Manager, information about the location of each volume is stored in a volume database. This residence entry contains information, such as robot number, robot host, robot type, and media type.

resource

A Novell NetWare term that refers to a data set on the target. For example, in DOS, resources are drives, directories, and files. Also see “target service.”



restore

(verb) The act of restoring selected files and directories from a previous backup or archive and returning them to their original directory locations (or to a different directory).

(noun) The process of restoring selected files and directories from a previous backup and returning them to their original directory locations (or to a different directory).

retention level

An index number that corresponds to a user-defined retention period. There are 10 levels from which to choose (0 through 9) and the retention period associated with each is configurable. Also see “retention period.”

retention period

The length of time that NetBackup keeps backup and archive images. The retention period is specified on the schedule.

robotic arm

The component of a robotic library that physically selects the media (tape or optical disk).

robotic library

Refers to a robot and its accompanying software. A robotic library includes a collection of tapes or optical platters used for data storage and retrieval. For example, a Tape Library DLT (TLD) refers to a robot that has TLD robotic control.

robotic volume group

A volume group from which media will be ejected and vaulted. When Vault duplicates backups, they are duplicated to media in the robotic volume group.

root

The highest level directory in a hierarchical directory structure. In MS-DOS, the root directory on a drive is designated by a backslash (for example, the root on drive C is C:\). On UNIX, the root directory is designated by a slash (/).

Also, a UNIX user name having administration capability.

RS-232

An industry-standard interface for serial communications and sometimes used for communicating with storage peripherals.



RSM Interface

Application in Windows 2000 used to manage Removable Storage Manager (RSM) devices.

RSM - Removable Storage Manager

A Media Manager designation for a category of robot. For the specific vendor types and models in this category, see the VERITAS support web site.

Also, a component of the Windows 2000 operating system that manages storage devices.

RVSN

See “recorded media ID.”

schedules

Controls when backups can occur in addition to other aspects of the backup, such as: the type of backup (full, incremental) and how long NetBackup retains the image.

SCSI

Small computer system interface. This is a type of parallel interface that is frequently used for communicating with storage peripherals.

server-directed restore

Using the user interface on the master server to restore files to any client. Only the administrator can perform this operation.

server independent restore

Restoring files by using a NetBackup server other than the one that was used to write the backup. This feature is available only with NetBackup DataCenter.

server list

The list of servers that a NetBackup client or server refers to when establishing or verifying connections to NetBackup servers. On a Windows server and Microsoft Windows clients, you update the list through a dialog box in the interface. On a UNIX server and UNIX and Macintosh clients, the list is in the `bp.conf` file. On NetWare target and OS/2 clients, the list is in the `bp.ini` file.

service

A program on a Windows server system that runs in the background and performs some task (for example, starting other programs when they are needed). Services are generally referred to as daemons on UNIX systems.



session

An instance of NetBackup checking its schedules for backups that are due, adding them to its worklist, and attempting to complete all jobs in the worklist. For user backups and archives, a session usually consists of a single backup or archive.

Session (Vault)

A vault session consists of executing a particular profile or profiles.

shared drives

See “Shared Storage Option (SSO).”

Shared Storage Option (SSO)

A separately priced VERITAS software option that allows tape drives (standalone or in a robotic library) to be dynamically shared among multiple NetBackup and Storage Migrator servers.

This option is supported only on NetBackup DataCenter servers.

SMDR

Storage management data requestor, a Novell NetWare program that provides its services transparently to all SMS modules and lets remote and local modules communicate with one another.

SMS

Novell NetWare storage management services.

source volume group

A volume group from which Vault can select backups to duplicate. This parameter is used to restrict the list of backups from all backups that reside on media in any volume group to backups that reside on media in a single volume group. Where a volume group corresponds to a particular robot, the profile will duplicate only backups on media in that robot. The Source Volume Group is normally only specified if you have multiple robots attached to the same server, for example you want to duplicate backups that reside in robot 0 to media that reside in robot 1.

SSO

See “Shared Storage Option (SSO).”

stacker

Usually a small robotic library that contains one drive only. See “robotic library.”



standalone

A qualifier used with drives and media to indicate they are not associated with a robot. For example, a standalone tape drive is one where you must manually find and insert tapes before using them. A standalone volume is one that is located in a standalone drive or is stored outside of a drive and designated as standalone in the volume configuration.

status code

A numerical code, usually accompanied by a troubleshooting message, that indicates the outcome of an operation.

storage migrator

Refers to the VERITAS Storage Migrator line of hierarchical storage management products for UNIX and Windows. These products make extra room on a disk by transparently moving data to other storage and then transparently retrieving the data when it is needed by a user or application.

Storage Migrator is available only for NetBackup DataCenter servers.

storage unit

Refers to a storage device where NetBackup or Storage Migrator stores files. It can be a set of drives in a robot or consist of one or more single tape drives that connect to the same host.

SUSPENDED media state

If a volume is SUSPENDED, NetBackup can restore from it but cannot use it for backups. NetBackup retains a record of the media ID until the last backup image on the volume expires.

symbolic link

On a UNIX system, this is a pointer to the name of the file that has the source data.

TapeAlert

Allows reactive cleaning for most drive types and is a function of the tape drive.

tape format

The format that an application uses to write data on a tape.

tape marks

A mark that is recorded between backup images on a tape.



tape overhead

The space required for data that is not part of the backup images. For example, tape marks and catalogs of what are on the tape are considered overhead.

tape spanning

Using more than one tape to store a single backup image.

tar

Tape Archive program that NetBackup uses to extract backup images during a restore.

target

See “target service.”

target service

A Novell NetWare service that needs storage management. The SMS views all services (for example, print services, communication services, workstations) as targets.

Target Service Agent

A Target-service agent is a Novell NetWare agent that prepares the target's data for SMS during a backup and for the target during a restore.

TLD - Tape Library DLT

A Media Manager designation for a category of robot. For the specific vendor types and models in this category, see the VERITAS support web site.

TLH - Tape Library Half-inch

A Media Manager designation for a category of robot. For the specific vendor types and models in this category, see the VERITAS support web site.

This robot type is supported only by NetBackup DataCenter servers.

TLM - Tape Library Multimedia

A Media Manager designation for a category of robot. For the specific vendor types and models in this category, see the VERITAS support web site.

This robot type is supported only by NetBackup DataCenter servers.

TL4 - Tape Library 4MM

A Media Manager designation for a category of robot. For the specific vendor types and models in this category, see the VERITAS support web site.



TL8 - Tape Library 8MM

A Media Manager designation for a category of robot. For the specific vendor types and models in this category, see the VERITAS support web site.

timeout period

The period of time that an application has allotted for an event to occur.

TIR

See “true image restore.”

tpconfig

A Media Manager administration utility for configuring devices which is started from the command line. On UNIX, it has a character-based menu interface that can be run from terminals that do not have X Windows capabilities. tpconfig also has a command line interface.

transfer rate

The rate at which computer information is transferred between a source and a destination.

transport

See “robotic arm.”

true image restore

Restores the contents of a directory to what it was at the time of any scheduled full or incremental backup. Previously deleted files are ignored.

TS8 - Tape Stacker 8MM

A Media Manager designation for a category of robot. For the specific vendor types and models in this category, see the VERITAS support web site.

TSA

See “Target Service Agent.”

TSD - Tape Stacker DLT

A Media Manager designation for a category of robot. For the specific vendor types and models in this category, see the VERITAS support web site.



TSH - Tape Stacker Half-inch

A Media Manager designation for a category of robot. For the specific vendor types and models in this category, see the VERITAS support web site.

This robot type is supported only by NetBackup DataCenter servers.

unassigned media

Media that contain no valid images. A piece of unassigned media has an entry in the volumes database but no entries in the images database. Unassigned Media do not have a “time assigned” in the Media section of the GUI.

user interface

The program used to perform user backups, archives, and restores.

user operation

A backup, archive, or restore that is started by a person on a client system.

Vault

Vault is a separately-priced NetBackup option that provides offsite backup management. Vault automatically duplicates specified backup images, and automates the process of offsite media rotation (a critical component of any backup or disaster recovery strategy). Vault manages offsite storage and retrieval of media for original backups, duplicate backups, and catalog backups. Additionally, NetBackup Vault generates reports to track the location and content of each piece of media.

vault

In the context of the NetBackup Vault, a vault is logical entity associated with a particular robot that acts as a designated holding place for backups that will eventually be sent to a physical offsite vault. The term ‘vault’ is used to refer both to the process, and to the physical storage location of a set of tapes offsite.

vault process

Vaulting is the process of choosing backup images to duplicate or eject, optionally duplicating backups, ejecting duplicate or original media, storing it at an offsite location, and later returning expired media to your robot. Vaulting is an integral part of the disaster recovery process.

verbose flag

Configuration file entry that causes a higher level of detail to be written in the logs.



verify

An operation that compares the list of files that are actually on a volume with what NetBackup has recorded as being on it. The data that is on the media is not verified.

vmadm

A Media Manager administrator utility for managing volumes. It runs on UNIX and has a character-based, menu interface that can be run from terminals.

vm.conf

A Media Manager configuration file with entries that include the servers that can manage local devices and default media ID prefixes for media that do not contain barcodes.

volume

Media Manager volumes are logical units of data storage or cleaning capability on media that have been assigned media IDs and other attributes, which are recorded in the Media Manager volume database.

volume configuration

Refers to configuration information that is stored in the Media Manager volume database.

volume database

An internal database where Media Manager keeps information about volumes. All hosts (where Media Manager is installed) have a volume database. However, the database is empty unless the host is designated as a volume database host.

volume database host

The host (where Media Manager is installed) that contains information about the volumes that Media Manager uses in a device. Because NetBackup BusinessServer supports only a single server, the volume database host is always on the same server.

volume group

A set of volumes that are configured within Media Manager to reside at the same physical location (for example, in a specific robot).

volume pool

A set of volumes that are configured within Media Manager to be used by a single application and are protected from access by other applications and users.

wakeup interval

The time interval at which NetBackup checks for backups that are due.



wildcard characters

A character that can be used to represent other characters in searches.

Microsoft Windows

(noun) Describes a line of operating systems developed by Microsoft, Inc.

For more information on the Windows operating systems that NetBackup supports, refer to the VERITAS support web site at <http://www.support.veritas.com>.

Windows

(adjective) Used to describe a specific product or clarify a term. Some examples are: Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows servers, Windows clients, Windows platforms, Windows hosts, and Windows GUI.

Windows servers

A term that defines the Windows server platforms that NetBackup supports; those platforms are: Windows NT and 2000.

Windows clients

A term that defines the Windows client platforms that NetBackup supports; those platforms are: Windows 95, 98, ME, NT, 2000, XP (for 32- and 64-bit versions), and LE.

Windows Display Console

A NetBackup-Java interface program that runs on Windows 2000, NT, 98, and 95 computers. Users can start this interface on their local system, connect to a UNIX system that has the NetBackup-Java software installed, and then perform any user operations that their permissions allow.

WORM media

Write-once, read-many media for optical disks. NetBackup Business Server does not support WORM media.

xbp

The X Windows-based backup, archive, and restore program for users on NetBackup UNIX clients.





Index

Symbols

(RSM) see Removable Storage Manager

A

Adding

drives 33

robot 27

volume pool 56

volumes

actions menu 66

update volume configuration 66

ADIC robot slot diagram

Fastor (TLD) 260

Scalar 218 (TLD) 252

Scalar AIT 220 (TL8) 258

VLS DLT (TSD) 253

Administrator quick reference 241

Allowable Media Manager characters 22

API robots 269

Assigned

time for volume 51

volumes 82

Assigned host

drive status 144

Assigning tape requests 154

ATL robot slot diagram

2/28 DLT (TLD) 253

M1500 (TLD) 255

P1000 (TLD) 254

authentication/authorization 24, 236

AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED, vm.conf

entry 243

Auto cleaning 226

Automatic Volume Recognition (AVR)

setting 138

B

Backup Exec

managing volumes 43, 91

Barcode

definition 50

overview 233

update in robot 93, 132

Barcode rules

add 123

change 127

delete 128

overview 234

bpexptime command 83

Breece Hill robot slot diagram

Q2.15 (TLD) 256

Q7 (TLD) 256

C

Changing

cleanings allowed 86, 227

drive configuration 38

host for device monitor 150

inventory update options 101

media description 86

robot configuration 37

volume attributes 83

volume expiration date 85

volume group name 87

volume maximum mounts 85

volume pool attributes 57

volume pool for a volume 58, 86

Character device 35

Cleaning

count field 52

frequency 225

Cleaning tape

adding 63

change cleanings allowed 86, 227

number of cleanings left 52

set count 70

wizrd 73

CLIENT_PORT_WINDOW, vm.conf entry



- 244
 - Commands, Media Manager 161
 - Comment, drive
 - adding 153
 - in drive status list 145
 - Compaq robot slot diagram
 - 35/70 (TLD) 257
 - MSL 5026 (TLD) 265
 - MSL 5052 (TLD) 265
 - TL891 (TLD) 262
 - TL892 (TLD) 262
 - Configuration
 - of media 43
 - Configuring
 - drives and robots 9
 - examples, drives and robots 40
 - Control mode, drive 143
 - Control path, robotic 31
 - Create barcode rules 99
 - Create media ID generation rules 99
 - Created field 53
 - Customize
 - Device Monitor window 148
 - Devices window 21
 - Media window 54
- D**
- DataStore volume pool 228
 - DAYS_TO_KEEP_LOGS, vm.conf entry 245
 - Deassign volumes 82
 - Deleting
 - drive 39
 - volume group 79
 - volume pool 59
 - volumes 78
 - DELL robot slot diagram
 - 130T (TLD) 266
 - Density
 - for drive types 143
 - for media types 146
 - Density field
 - 4mm 146
 - 8mm 146
 - dlt 146
 - hcart 146
 - qscsi 146
 - Denying requests 158
 - Description field, volume list 48, 53
 - Description, for new volume 69
 - Device
 - character 35
 - configuration analyzer 12
 - configuration limitations 4
 - configuration wizard 7, 26, 33, 37, 222
 - no rewind 35
 - volume header 36
 - Device file, robotic 31
 - Device host
 - definition 3
 - Device monitor
 - overview 135
 - add drive comment 153
 - assigning requests 154
 - changing host 150
 - display pending requests 153
 - display the window 135
 - resubmit request 158
 - Devices management window
 - displaying 9
 - menus 11
 - status bar 20
 - toolbar 12
 - DISABLE_AUTO_PATH_CORRECTION, vm.conf entry 245
 - DISABLE_STANDALONE_DRIVE_EXTENSIONS 64
 - DISALLOW_NONNDMP_ON_NDMP_DRIVE, vm.conf entry 245
 - DO_NOT_EJECT_STANDALONE, vm.conf entry 246
 - Down drive, setting 138
 - Drive
 - add comment 153
 - changing operating mode 150
 - character device 35
 - cleaning 73
 - control mode 143
 - density 143
 - initial state 34
 - initial status 34
 - monitoring use 135
 - no rewind device 35
 - reset 152, 198
 - robot drive number 36
 - robot library, controlling drive 36
 - servicing requests 153
 - standalone 36
 - type 34



- types and densities 143
 - volume header device 36
 - Drive and slot diagrams 251
 - Drive cleaning
 - manual 226
 - Drive status list
 - assigned host field 144
 - comment field 145
 - control field 143
 - drive index field 144
 - drive name 142
 - drive name field 142
 - external media ID field 144
 - label field 144
 - ready field 144
 - recorded media ID field 144
 - request ID field 145
 - shared field 143
 - type field 143
 - user field 144
 - write enabled field 144
- E**
- Eject volume from robot
 - for move volume 78
 - menu command 46
 - methods available 62
 - multiple volumes 46
 - Empty media access port prior to update 100
 - Enhanced Authorization
 - allowable Media Manager commands 240
 - setting up 240
 - Exabyte robot slot diagram
 - 10i,10e,10h (TS8) 257
 - 18D (TLD) 258
 - 210 (TS8) 257
 - 220 (TL8) 258
 - 230D (TLD) 259
 - 430 (TL8) 252
 - EZ17 (TS8) 257
 - Expiration date, volume
 - definition 52
 - changing (see Changing)
 - External device mapping files 26
 - External media ID
 - drive status 144
 - pending requests 146
- F**
- First media id
 - add volume range 69
 - First mount time field 52
 - First slot number
 - add volumes 69
 - for move volumes 77
 - Frequency-based cleaning 225
- H**
- Host
 - device 3
 - for device monitor 150
 - Media Manager 3
 - volume database 3, 30
 - HP robot slot diagram
 - SureStore 1/9 (TLD) 259
 - SureStore E 3/30 (TLD) 266
- I**
- IBM robot slot diagram
 - 3447-105 (TLD) 256
 - 7337-305 (TLD) 256
 - Images
 - expiring with bpexpdate 83
 - Inject volume into robot
 - add volume 71
 - for move volume 78
 - methods available 60
 - multiple volumes 100
 - robot inventory 61
 - Insert volume 97
 - Inventory and compare robot contents 94
- L**
- Label
 - field 144
 - media tapes 65
 - Library sharing 270
 - Library-based cleaning 225, 226
 - Limitations
 - storage device 4
- M**
- M4 Data robot slot diagram
 - M1500 (TLD) 255
 - Mapping Backup Exec
 - media types, vm.conf entry 243
 - Maximum mounts
 - add volume 70
 - change volumes 85



-
- Media
 - density 146
 - mount request 154
 - recycling 89
 - replacing 87
 - Media ID
 - add volume 69
 - definition 50
 - generation rules 236
 - generation rules defined 131
 - prefix for update robot 104
 - style for new volumes 69
 - Media management window
 - displaying 43
 - menus 11, 45
 - status bar 20, 53
 - toolbar 12, 46
 - Media Manager
 - allowable characters 22
 - authentication/authorization security 238
 - configuration file 243
 - overview 1
 - security 24
 - server-based security 239
 - Media Manager host
 - overview 3
 - Media pool (see Volume pool)
 - Media type
 - 4MM 214
 - 4MM_CLN 215
 - 8MM 214
 - 8MM_CLN 215
 - DLT 214
 - DLT_CLN 215
 - for new volume 68
 - for update options 106
 - for update options (ACS, LMF, TLH, TLM) 110
 - HC_CLN 215
 - HCART 214
 - mappings, default 110
 - QCART 214
 - MEDIA_ID_BARCODE_CHARS, vm.conf entry 246
 - MEDIA_ID_PREFIX, vm.conf entry 247
 - Microsoft RSM Libraries 269
 - Mode field 146
 - Mount requests, pending 153
 - Move volumes
 - logical move 232
 - methods available 73
 - overview 73, 232
 - physical move 232
 - update volume configuration 74
 - Multiple drive types 72
- N**
- Naming conventions 22
 - NCR robot slot diagram 6461 (TLD) 267
 - NEC robot slot diagram Autoloader DLT (TLD) 261
 - NetBackup
 - authentication 237
 - authorization 237
 - pool 48, 51
 - volume pool 59
 - wizards 6
 - NetBackup Administration Console 6
 - No rewind device 35
 - Number of mounts 51
 - Number of volumes 68
- O**
- Operating mode, drive changing 150
 - Operator, definition 153
 - Optical disk
 - partner ID 52
 - Overland Data robot slot diagram
 - Library Pro (TL8) 263
 - LXBx110 (TLD) 262
 - LXBx210 (TLD) 262
 - LxL1u11(TLD) 264
 - NEO (TLD) 264
 - Overview of
 - barcodes 233
 - drive cleaning 225
 - robots 213
 - volume groups 227
 - volume pools 227
- P**
- Partially-configured devices 27
 - Partner field 52
 - Pending requests
 - barcode field 146
 - density field 146



- device host name 145
- external media ID field 146
- mode field 146
- recorded media ID field 146
- request ID field 145
- time field 146
- user field 146
- volume group field 147
- Pool (see Volume pool)
- PREFERRED_GROUP, vm.conf entry 247
- PREVENT_MEDIA_REMOVAL, vm.conf entry 248
- Print device configuration 39
- Processes
 - robotic 220
 - robotic control 221
- R**
- RANDOM_PORTS, vm.conf entry 248
- Reactive cleaning 226
- Ready status 144
- Recorded media ID
 - drive status 144
 - pending requests 146
- Recycle media 89
- Refresh rate, changing 148
- Removable Storage Manager (RSM)
 - adding volumes 272
 - barcode operations 273, 275
 - configuring drives 271
 - media Pools 269
 - media requests 270
 - overview 270
 - removing tapes 273
 - robot types 29
 - robots 99, 110
- Removing
 - volumes 97
- Replace media 87
- ReqId (see Request ID)
- Request ID field
 - drive status 145
 - pending requests 145
- Requests
 - overview 153
 - assigning 154
 - denying 158
 - display pending 153
 - example assignment 156
 - identification number
 - drive status 145
 - pending requests 145
 - resubmitting 158
- REQUIRED_INTERFACE, vm.conf entry 248
- Reset drive 152, 198
- Residence
 - defined 63
 - for move volumes 75
 - in update options 103
 - update volume configuration 98
- Retention period
 - expiring backups, with bpexpdate 83
- right-click shortcut menus 7
- Robot
 - attributes 215
 - barcode rules 122
 - barcode update 132
 - destination for move volume 76
 - device file 31
 - device host 29
 - drive number 36
 - for new volume 68
 - hos 49
 - host, definition 51
 - inventory 72, 91
 - inventory and compare contents 94
 - number 29
 - process 220
 - type 29
 - update volume configuration 97
 - volume database host 30
 - with more than one type of drive 72
- Robot type
 - RSM 214
 - TL4 214
 - TL8 214
 - TLD 214
 - TS8 214
 - TSD 214
- Robotic
 - cleaning 226
 - control process 221
 - device file 31
 - library 36
 - test utilities 220
- robtest 220, 241
- RSM_ vm.conf entry 249



rsmd, command 162

S

Scratch pool
 adding 56
 changing to 58
 overview 230
SCRATCH_POOL, vm.conf entry 249
SERVER, vm.conf entry 24, 249
Shared field
 drive status 143
Shortcut menus 7, 20, 53, 147
Show robot contents 93
Slot number
 add volume 69
 for move volumes 77
Sony robot slot diagram
 LIB-304 (TL8) 252
Standalone drive
 add drive 36
Status
 drive initial configuration 34
 volume 52
STK robot slot diagram
 9730 (TLD) 266
 9738 (TLD) 266
 L20 (TLD) 267
Stop/Restart Device Manager service 24
Storage devices
 steps for attaching 23
Sun robot slot diagram
 StorEdge L1000 (TLD) 254
 StorEdge L400 (TL8) 258
 StorEdge L9 (TLD) 259

T

Table-driven robotics 220
Tape
 device installer 23
 drivers 23
 installer 23
TapeAlert 226
Tapes and tape files
 assigning requests 154
 example of handling a request 156
 labels 144
 mode 146
 time requested 146
Terminating drive assignment 152
Time

 assigned 51
 field 146

tl4d command 163
tl8cd command 164
tl8d command 164
tlcdc command 167
tldd command 167
Toolbars, viewing and customizing 12, 46
tpclean command 170
tpconfig, command 173
tpreq command 181
tpunmount
 command 183
ts8d command 184
tsdd command 185
Type field
 4mm 143
 8mm 143
 dlt 143
 hcart 143
 qscsi 143

U

Up drive
 standard mode (AVR) 138
Update and rescan barcodes 132
Update robot
 procedure 99
 update options 101
Update volume configuration
 when not to use 98
 when to use 97
Updating
 barcodes 132
User field
 drive status 144
 pending requests 146
Using Media Manager devices with other applications 1

V

VERBOSE, vm.conf entry 250
VERITAS support web site 23, 27
vm.conf file
 adding SERVER entries 24
 AUTHORIZATION_REQUIRED entries 243
 CLIENT_PORT_WINDOW entries 244
 DAYS_TO_KEEP_LOGS entries 245
 DISABLE_AUTO_PATH_CORRECTIO



- N entries 245
 - DISALLOW_NONNDMP_ON_NDMP_
 - DRIVE entries 245
 - DO_NOT_EJECT_STANDALONE
 - entries 246
 - mapping Backup Exec media type
 - entries 243
 - MEDIA_ID_BARCODE_CHARS entries 246
 - MEDIA_ID_PREFIX entries 247
 - overview 243
 - PREFERRED_GROUP entries 247
 - PREVENT_MEDIA_REMOVAL entries 248
 - RANDOM_PORTS entries 248
 - REQUIRED_INTERFACE entries 248
 - RSM_ entries 249, 276
 - SCRATCH_POOL entries 249
 - SERVER entries 249
 - VERBOSE entries 250
 - vmadd command 186
 - vmchange command 189
 - vmcheckxxx command 195
 - vmd
 - security 236
 - vmdelete command 197
 - vmoprmd command 198
 - vmppool command 201
 - vmquery command 204
 - vmrule command 208
 - vmupdate command 210
 - Volume configuration wizard 8, 72
 - Volume database host
 - definition 3
 - for robot 30
 - Volume group
 - add volume 70
 - changing name 87
 - definition 228
 - deleting 79
 - for move volume 77
 - pending request field 147
 - rules for assigning 228
 - volumes list 49, 51
 - Volume pool
 - overview 55, 228
 - add volume 71
 - adding 56
 - changing attributes 57
 - changing for a volume 58
 - configuring a scratch pool 58, 230
 - DataStore pool 48
 - deleting 59
 - for update robot 109
 - in volume list 51
 - NetBackup pool 48, 51
 - Volumes
 - adding (see Adding)
 - assigned 82
 - barcode 50
 - changing (see Changing)
 - cleaning count
 - attribute 86
 - volumes list 52
 - creation time and date 53
 - deleting (see Deleting)
 - description for new volume 69
 - first time mounted 52
 - group (see Volume group)
 - header device 36
 - last time mounted 52
 - maximum mounts allowed 70
 - media ID column 50
 - media ID style 69
 - moving 73, 232
 - moving actions menu 74
 - optical disk partner 52
 - recycling 89
 - replacing 87
 - robot number 49, 51
 - robot, host 49, 51
 - side/face 52
 - slot 51
 - status 52
 - time assigned 51
 - volume pool (see Volume pool)
 - Volumes to move
 - for move volume 76
- W**
- Wizard
 - device configuration 7, 26, 37, 222
 - volume configuration 8, 72
 - Write enabled
 - field 144
 - tape 146

